

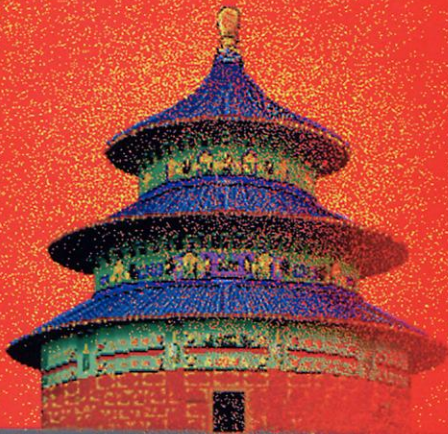
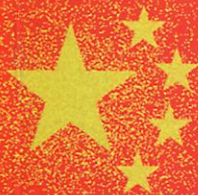
**ASSiMiL**<sup>®</sup>

The World leader in self study language courses

# Chinese

*With Ease*

Volume 1



*the day-by-day method*

**ASSIMIL®**

**Chinese with Ease**  
**Volume One**

by

**Philippe Kantor**

adapted for English-speakers  
by **Clare Perkins**

*Illustrated by J.-L. Goussé*

**ASSIMIL®**

*Published in India under licence by*



**GOYAL SaāB**

[goyal@goyalsaab.com](mailto:goyal@goyalsaab.com)  
[www.assimil.com](http://www.assimil.com)

This special low-price edition is for sale in  
India, Nepal, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Sri Lanka,  
Bhutan, Myanmar and Maldives only.

Bound books, lavishly illustrated, containing lessons and  
exercises recorded on cassettes and CDs

[www.assimil.com](http://www.assimil.com)

#### “With Ease” series

Arabic with Ease  
*Armenian with Ease\**  
Chinese with Ease vol. 1  
Chinese with Ease vol. 2  
Writing Chinese with Ease  
Dutch with Ease  
German with Ease  
Hungarian with Ease  
Italian with Ease  
Japanese with Ease vol. 1  
Japanese with Ease vol. 2  
Writing Japanese with Ease  
New French with Ease  
Spanish with Ease

#### For travelling

Dutch from the Word Go!  
French from the Word Go!  
German from the Word Go!

#### Advanced language skills

Using French  
Using Spanish

#### “Business”

Business French

#### For children

Sing your way to French!

ISBN 81-8307-045-0

© ASSIMIL 2005

For the original edition

© 2006 GOYAL Publishers & Distributors. Pvt. Ltd.

for the Indian edition

all right reserved

[www.goyalsaab.com](http://www.goyalsaab.com)

Printed in India by Gopsons Papers Ltd., Noida

## FOREWORD

### HOW TO LEARN TO SPEAK CHINESE WITH EASE

You will gradually learn to speak Chinese, without too much difficulty by reading and listening to the lessons for half an hour each day, and by repeating each sentence several times, one after another.

First things first: before beginning a new lesson, take a deep breath and relax, during the **First Wave** your main task will be to listen and repeat, do a few exercises and become acquainted with Chinese.

- 1) As an option, you can start by reading and listening to the previous dialogue to keep in mind the new words and structures learned the day before.
- 2) Then, if you have the recordings at home—which we recommend as they are a great help to get familiar with Chinese sounds—listen to the dialogue of the day.
- 3) Listen again and repeat each sentence: a blank is left on the recordings between each sentence of the thirteen first lessons.
- 4) Compare the pinyin transcription to the Chinese characters, on the left-hand page; then look at the right-hand page. A current English translation gives you the meaning of what you have heard or read and a literal translation, in italics, helps you not only to identify the meaning of each Chinese character, but also to understand the structure of each Chinese sentence.
- 5) In the dialogue, you will find numbers that refer to footnotes. They provide you with grammar and vocabulary explanations, or with remarks on cultural aspects of China. Read them carefully, but don't learn them by heart. All in good time!
- 6) Once you feel at ease with the new dialogue, move on to the exercises. They will help you consolidate what you have learned so far.
- 7) Now relax, you have earned it!

Remember that the best way to learn a language is to speak it and to get used to its sounds and structures. Don't hesitate to repeat and repeat again sentences from the dialogues that come to mind. Speak out loud and take every opportunity to practice, when stuck in a traffic jam for example, or in the shower. Forget your fears or complexes! Enjoy learning Chinese!

**From Lesson 50 onwards, while you are studying a new lesson each day, you will also be asked to go back to the beginning and take up the active study of each lesson with the *Second Wave* exercises.** You will then translate each lesson from English to Chinese, and this will help to refresh your memorization of the basic notions. The success of your study depends on regular commitment. Spend half an hour on each lesson, and you will be able to participate in a conversation in Chinese much sooner than you expected!

## CONTENTS

Foreword.....	iii
(How to Learn to speak Chinese with Ease)	
Introduction.....	vii
The Sounds of Spoken Chinese	
using the pinyin alphabet .....	x
The Four Tones in Chinese .....	xiv
Introduction to Writing Chinese .....	xviii
Notes on The Recording .....	xxiv
Getting Familiar with Chinese Sounds .....	xxvii
Lessons 1 – 49.....	1 – 292
Appendix I: Index for Revision Lessons .....	294
Appendix II: Index of Characters .....	314
Appendix III: Useful Words.....	352
Appendix IV: Table of Radicals with Their Meaning.....	355
Appendix V: Grammar Memo .....	367
Appendix VI: Index of Combined Sounds in Chinese.....	373
Appendix VII: Bibliography .....	379

# CHINESE WITH EASE

## Introduction

Chinese is a language spoken by over a billion people in China and other countries of Southeast Asia and the Chinese diaspora. There are many variants of the language in China, the most widely spoken being Cantonese, Shanghai dialect and Hakka. Although there are also many other languages spoken by ethnic minorities in China that have no common roots with Chinese, such as Mongolian or Tibetan which use an alphabet, the common tongue throughout the territory is based on northern Chinese, and more particularly the dialect of Peking. This language, also known as Mandarin, is called 普通话 pǔtōnghuà – *the common tongue* – in Chinese. It is taught in schools throughout the country and is now widely spoken in areas where there is also a local form of Chinese or a dialect.

It is this 'official' form of Chinese that you will learn from *Chinese with Ease*. However this method concentrates on spoken Chinese rather than the study of the characters.

Of course books and newspapers are printed in characters. However, the main aim of this book is not reading, but learning to speak. That's why the texts are presented in characters and also in the transcription established in the People's Republic of China for use in teaching and for international communication. This alphabetical transcription is also known as "pinyin" or CPA (Chinese Phonetic Alphabet). The rules for its pronunciation are given below.

If you can, use the recordings: they are of great assistance in the study of a tonal language like Chinese. Students who also wish to learn to read and write must study the lesson in characters and practice writing them according to the rules set out below. *Writing Chinese with Ease* is also here to help you pursue your study of the written language.

It is absolutely essential to study regularly: it is advisable to spend half an hour per day rather than two whole days a week!

The lessons follow a logical progression, so always make sure that you have assimilated the content of each lesson before going on to the next.

A few words on the Chinese language will help you to understand the use of the pinyin transcription. Each Chinese character is a unit that may be combined with other units to form words. Each character is monosyllabic. This method gives the characters and uses the phonetic transcription of words. A word in Chinese can be made up of one, two or more syllables. There is no universally recognized system for joining pinyin syllables together. In *Chinese with Ease* they are joined if they form a semantic unit or are hyphenated to indicate a grammatical connection.

马	mǎ	horse
方法	fāngfǎ	method
录音机	lùyīnjī	tape recorder

Chinese grammar is relatively simple: there are no declensions, no conjugations and no gender... Chinese characters are invariable.

是 shì (the verb *to be*) can be translated *am, is, are*. The personal pronoun gives the indication for the correct translation:

我是	wǒ shì	<i>I am</i>
你是	nǐ shì	<i>you are</i>

Syntax often determines the grammatical role of words:

好人	hǎo rén	<i>a good man</i>
人好	rén hǎo	<i>men are good</i>

In one case 好 hǎo is used as an adjective, describing a noun, in the other, its role is verbal. It is the position of 好 hǎo in relation to 人 rén that determines its function.

## Pronunciation

Each syllable in Chinese is pronounced with a tone: this is the pitch and melodic curve of the voice for each syllable. There are four tones plus a neutral tone in 普通话 pǔtōnghuà, *the common tongue*, and they must be pronounced with great care. An error of pronunciation can cause complete confusion or be a great source of amusement!

买	mǎi	means <i>to buy</i> , whereas
卖	mài	means <i>to sell</i>
你	nǐ	means <i>you</i> , whereas
腻	nì	means <i>fatty</i> .

There is as much difference between 北极 běijí, *the north pole*, and 背脊 bèijǐ, *the back*, as between “path” and “bath” for an English speaker.

The four tones are represented with the four following signs: ˉ ˊ ˋ ˋˊ. They are explained in detail at the end of the presentation of the phonetic alphabet.

Every character in Chinese has its tone, but in a given sentence some tones become neutral if not stressed. The transcription in *Chinese with Ease* takes this into account, and reproduces the language as you are likely to hear it on the street in Beijing (北, *north*; 京, *capital* ie. *Peking*). You will only hear every syllable with its tone if you are listening to Peking Opera! However, you must know the tone for each character in order to avoid confusion. Remember if you don't know the tone, you don't know the word.

\*\*\*

The two sections of the introduction to phonetics are related to each other and they must both be studied carefully: *The Sounds of Spoken Chinese* and *The Four Tones of Chinese*. These two facets are essential in order to understand and to be understood. And now... let's go!

## The Sounds of Spoken Chinese using the pinyin alphabet

### Conventions of the pinyin transcription

(The sounds introduced below are all pronounced twice in the recording. If necessary, you can refer to the index of sounds in the introduction, cf. *Getting Familiar with Chinese Sounds*.)

### Vowels

There are six basic vowels: a, o, e, i, u, ü

a	as in <b>father</b>
o	as in <b>rot</b>
e	as in <b>learn</b> , but long
i	as in <b>see</b>
u	as in <b>food</b>
ü	as in the French <b>lu</b> , <b>vu</b> , <b>rue</b> . To make this sound your lips should be in the position for blowing out a candle, while you say 'ee'. Try it! It really works!

and three diphthongs: ie, ei, üe

ie	as in <b>yes</b>
ei	as in <b>may</b>
üe	ü (see above) + e as in <b>bet</b>

These vowels can be **combined** to give the sounds: ai, ao, ou, ia, ua, uo, iao, iu, uai, ui.

ai	as in <b>eye</b>
ao	as in <b>how</b>
ou	as in <b>oh!</b>

x •

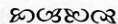
ia	as in <b>yak</b>
ua	as in <b>swahili</b>
uo	as in <b>walk</b>
iao	<b>ee</b> as in <b>see</b> + <b>ow</b> as in <b>how</b>
iu	<b>ee</b> as in <b>see</b> + <b>oh!</b>
uai	<b>oo</b> as in <b>food</b> + <b>eye</b>
ui	<b>oo</b> as in <b>food</b> + <b>ay</b> as in <b>may</b>

There are 16 **consonantal** vowels.

Some are nasal in which case they end with a "g": an, en, ang, eng, on, ian, in, ing, iang, iong, uan, (w)en, uang, (w)eng, (y)uan, (y)en.

an	as in <b>Ann</b>
en	as in <b>uneasy</b>
ang	as in <b>unconscious</b> but nasal
eng	as in <b>sung</b>
ong	as in <b>oncology</b> but nasal
ian	as in <b>yen</b>
in	as in <b>yin</b>
ing	the same vowel but nasal
iang	nasal as in <b>young</b>
iong	as in <b>Leon</b> but nasal
uan	<b>oo</b> + <b>an</b> as in <b>wangle</b>
(w)en	as in <b>uneasy</b>
uang	as in <b>oo</b> in <b>food</b> + <b>ang</b> as in <b>sang</b>
(w)eng	<b>oo</b> in <b>food</b> + <b>enc</b> in <b>sung</b> but nasal
(y)uan	<b>u</b> as in the French <b>rue</b> + <b>an</b> as in <b>Ann</b>
(y)un	<b>u</b> as in the French <b>rue</b> + <b>en</b> as in <b>enforce</b>

And lastly the vowel er, as in the ending of flower: the tongue is curved upwards towards the roof of the mouth.



### Consonants

In Chinese, consonants are only present at the **beginning** of a syllable, except for -n and -ng that represent a nasal vowel.

There are 21 consonants, which are traditionally classified in six groups: b, p, m, f – d, t, n, l – g, k, h – z, c, s – zh, ch, sh – r, j, q, x.

The consonants b, p, m, f. Examples: ba; pa; ma; fa; ban; pan; man; fan...

**b** between an English **b** and an English **p**: between **bowl** and **pole**: a very short consonant. No breath is expelled.

**p** this consonant is “aspirated”, which means it is accompanied by expelled air and more so than an English **p**. Air must be expelled sharply between the lips.

**m** as in **make**.

**f** as in **full**.

The consonants d, t, n, l. Examples: da; ta; na; la; dan; tan; nan; lan...

**d** between the **d** of **die** and the **t** of **tie**. Very short consonant. No air must escape. The tip of the tongue presses on the back of the front teeth.

**t** “aspirated” consonant: the sound is accompanied by an expiration of breath with more force than an English **t** in time.

**n** as in English **nine**.

**l** as in English **lake**.

The consonants g, k, h: gai, kai, hai.

**g** between the **g** in **goat**, and the **k** in **car**.

**k** an “aspirated” consonant. Breath should be expelled sharply and rapidly more so than an English **k**.

**h** this is like **ch** sound in Scots as in **loch** or the Spanish “jota” as in **Juan**.

The consonants z, c, s: zai, cai, sai

**z** a **d** followed by a **z** as in **adze**.  
Note: the sound **z**, without a vowel, is written **zi**.

**c** the sound **tss**, followed by a sharp expelling of air.  
Note: the sound **c**, without a vowel, is written **ci**.

**s** the English **s** as in **Simon**.  
Note: The sound **s**, without a vowel, is written **si**.

The consonants zh, ch, sh, r. Examples: zhan; chan; shan; ran

**zh** as in **John**.  
Note: the sound **zh**, without a vowel is written **zhi**.

**ch** **tch** as in **catch** and “aspirated”; the air must be expelled sharply. Note: the sound **ch** without a vowel is written **chi**.

**sh** as in **ship**  
Note: the sound **sh**, without a vowel, is written **shi**.

**r** as in **read**.  
Note: the sound **r**, without a vowel, is written **ri**.

**-r** The sound **r** as a word ending, is used in the Peking area, pronounced as in the American **flower**.

The consonants j, q, x. Examples: ji; qi; xi

These three consonants can only be followed by the vowels **i** or **ü**. So there is no umlaut on **ju**, **qu** and **xu**.

**j** between **dz** and **dj**.

**q** “aspirated” consonant. The sound **tsh** with air expelled sharply.

**x** between **sh** and **s**. Between **shoal** and **sole**.

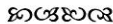


## Pronunciation Tips

- When *iu* is not preceded by a consonant it is written *you*.
- When *ui* is not preceded by a consonant it is written *wei*.
- When the vowels beginning with the sound “*ee*” are not preceded by a consonant, a “*y*” is used instead of an “*i*” (except for *i*, *in*, *ing* which keep the “*i*”). So we have: *yí*, *ya*, *ye*, *yao*, *you*, *yan*, *yin*, *ying* and *yong*.
- When the vowels beginning with the sound “*oo*” are not preceded by a consonant, “*w*” is used instead of “*u*” (except for “*u*” which is written *wu*). So we have: *wu*, *wa*, *wo*, *wai*, *wei*, *wan*, *wang*, *weng*.
- When vowels beginning with “*ü*” are not preceded by a consonant, “*ü*” is written *yu*. So we have: *yu*, *yue*, *yuan*, but also *yun*.
- For nasal vowels, do not emphasize the final “*n*” nor the final “*g*”. These are merely a convention to distinguish between *an* and *ang*.

**Remember:** The letter *i* corresponds to the sound **ee** **except** after *Z*, *c*, *s*, *zh*, *ch*, *sh*, and *r*. After these seven consonants it indicates a syllable without a vowel, as if the consonant were followed by a “silent *e*”.

In Appendix VI, you will find a Table of the Combined Sounds in Chinese, syllables beginning with the same vowel are placed on the same line, and syllables with the same vowel in the same column. You can consult the table if you forget the conventions of pinyin or for doing phonetic exercises.



## The Four Tones in Chinese

Every syllable in Chinese has a **tone**. There are **four tones plus a neutral tone**. The tone is the pitch and the melodic line of the voice when pronouncing a syllable. The four tones are represented with a tone mark, placed on the vowel that bears the accent. The four tones are: — ‘ ˊ ˋ ˋˊ .

**The first tone**, marked — is the flat tone.

The voice stays at the same pitch, without going up or down: *mā*. It is like singing a note, and maintaining it at the same pitch: *ā*; *mā*; *lā*.

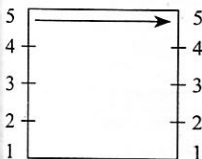
Examples:

<i>māo</i>	<i>cat</i>	<i>kāi chē</i>	<i>to drive a car</i>
<i>lā</i>	<i>to pull</i>	<i>guāng huī</i>	<i>brightness</i>

To help you to comprehend the pronunciation of each tone, it can be represented on a diagram.

The pitch of the voice is represented on a scale of 1 to 5. Point 1 is the lowest point on the scale. Point 2 is between low and normal pitch. Point 3 is normal pitch. Point 4 is between normal and high. Point five is the highest point. The register between 1 and 5 depends on the individual, the region and the context but corresponds to about one octave.

The first tone is marked: —

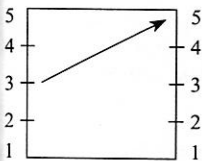


The arrow represents the time it takes to produce the sound or its “duration”.

The first tone is represented 5 – 5.

The voice starts at the high register and stays at that pitch.

The second tone is marked: ˊ



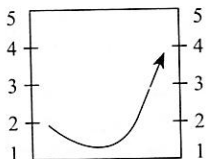
It is represented on the chart by 3 – 5.

The voice begins at normal pitch and rises to the highest point: *má*; *lá*; *ní*; *cháng*.

Examples:

<i>qiáoliáng</i>	<i>bridge</i>
<i>tóudí</i>	<i>to defect to the enemy</i>
<i>cháoliú</i>	<i>trend, current</i>
<i>gélí</i>	<i>to keep apart</i>
<i>cányú</i>	<i>remnants</i>
<i>nán</i>	<i>difficult</i>

The third tone is marked: ˇ

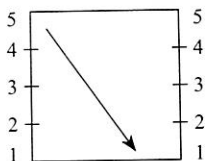


It is represented on the diagram by 2-1-4. The voice begins at medium low, descends to low and then rises to mid-high: mǎ; lǎ; měi.

Examples:

mǎ	horse
měi	beautiful
shǒuzhǎng	head of department

The fourth tone is marked: ˋ



This is the descending tone. It is the shortest of the four tones. It is represented 5-1. It starts at the highest point of the register and drops to the lowest point: mà; là; lèi.

Examples:

kàn	to see, to read
tiàodòng	to pulse
shènglì	victory

As well as the four tones mentioned above, there is also the “neutral tone”, which indicates that the syllable is not accented and is pronounced lightly. For instance, the last syllable on many bisyllabic words:

zhuōzi	table
yǐzi	chair
mùtou	wood
fángzi	house

The tone is marked on the vowel that bears the intonation. The tone is always marked on the first vowel of the syllable, except if this is i, u or ü.

Examples:

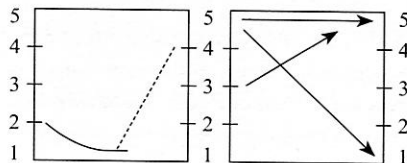
lǐlùn	theory
lǎodiào	refrain
niúnnǎi	milk
nǚèdài	to maltreat
luànchuí	to boast

An apostrophe is sometimes used to avoid confusion; for example: two syllables lì'ǎn (*to endorse, to register*) and one syllable liàn (*to exercise*).

It should also be pointed out that, the faster a sentence is spoken, the more the melodic curve of each syllable (and therefore of each tone) tend to approach a minimum differentiation. When you are talking fast, it is also important to respect the melodic curve of the sentence, which is as important as the outline of each of the words. So a syllable that is originally a third tone, when it comes before a first, second or fourth tone syllable receives a “half” pronunciation on the descending part of the tone and is pronounced: 2-1-1.

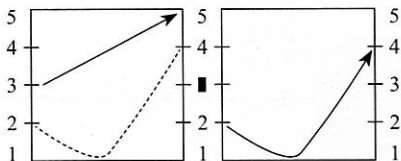
Examples:

xǐhuān	to like
xiǎoxué	primary school
mǐfàn	cooked rice



However, before another third tone syllable, the first third tone is pronounced as a second tone:

hěn hǎo gǎnlǎn	very good olive	is in fact pronounced is pronounced	hén hǎo gánlǎn
-------------------	--------------------	--	-------------------



Anyway, Chinese should be learned through use. By repeating the sentences and the dialogues, you will become aware of the general principles of the tonal system in Chinese. But what is most important is understanding the meaning of a conversation, without trying to analyze every element of every sentence. Read the texts out loud as often as possible, and only go on to the next lesson when you have understood the meaning of the dialogues and the exercises.

## Introduction to Writing Chinese

Here is a brief introduction to writing with characters (to further your study, use *Writing Chinese with Ease*). If you are planning to learn to read and write in Chinese without relying on the phonetic transcription, then provide yourself with some squared paper, a fine-point pen and a good dose of determination!

You are probably already aware that Chinese is written using characters or “ideograms”. Each written sign corresponds to one syllable of the spoken language. So when you say two syllables, for example 吃饭 *chī fàn* (*to eat*) the word is written with two characters. Each character takes up the same space on the paper, and the characters are written one after the other horizontally from left to right, as if each character was taking up one space on a sheet

of squared paper. Traditionally scripts were written from top to bottom and from right to left. Signs, posters or titles may still be written this way.

Chinese writing dates from more than three thousand years ago. The earliest known examples were engraved on tortoise-shells or on bones. The form of writing has evolved gradually and has been standardized, reformed and simplified. The most recent measure was in 1956 when the Chinese authorities simplified the writing by reducing the number of strokes in many of the most commonly used characters. This is the simplified form of writing used here.

## The basic element: the stroke

Words in Chinese are mostly polysyllabic. As each syllable is represented by one character, words are written with several characters.

The basic unit for writing words is the character (or ideogram). A character is made up of several strokes. Some simple characters have two or three strokes but the complex ones can have more than fifteen! There are eight basic strokes that can be combined to write all the existing characters. These are:

dot	丶
horizontal	一
up curve	ノ
vertical	丨
left curve	㇇
right curve	㇏
left hook	㇇
right hook	㇏

These strokes can be combined to form a series of complex strokes, for example:

horizontal with vertical	𠃍
vertical with horizontal	𠃊

right curve with hook  
etc. (there are about twenty complex strokes)

Certain basic rules must be respected, for example:

- the horizontal stroke is always written from left to right
- the vertical stroke is always written from top to bottom
- when a horizontal is crossed with a vertical, the horizontal is always written first: 一 十
- when a character includes both a left curve and a right curve, the left curve is always written first: 丿 人
- when a character is made up of several parts written one below the other, the elements of the character are written from top to bottom.
- when a character contains elements juxtaposed horizontally, these elements are set out from left to right, etc.

For example the character 口 kǒu, *mouth*, is written with three strokes in the following order:

丨 then 凵 then 口

我 wǒ, *I, me* is written in the following way:

一 二 手 手 我 我 我

## The three types of characters

Traditionally in China, characters are divided into three groups:

- **pictograms**. These are a representation of the object. As such they are similar to hieroglyphs. At the outset, the character for horse represented a horse. As mentioned earlier, Chinese writing has evolved over the centuries, and today, the character for *horse* 马 although directly descended from the original drawing, no longer really resembles a horse. However, it is still possible to recognize this animal in the unsimplified character: 馬.

In the same way, the character *elephant* was originally a drawing of an elephant's head: 象. The character for *bow* represented a bow: 弓, the character for *fishing net* represented a net: 网.

- **ideograms**. These are more abstract, in that they are the representation of a concept; so *to rest* is written with the element *person*, 亻, and the element *tree*, 木 (A man under a tree being a perfect image of restfulness!): 休.

The word *crowd* is made up of three *person* elements 众, the word for *peaceful* is made up of the element for *woman*, 女, under the element for *roof* 宀; 安.

- **ideophonograms**. These are characters composed of two elements: one gives an approximate idea of the **meaning**, (this part is the “key” or radical, and the other gives an approximate idea of the **pronunciation**).

Every character has a radical. According to the traditional listing in classical Chinese, there are 214 radicals. As a result of simplification of the script, in modern dictionaries, the number varies at around 200.

The radical indicates the semantic field of the character. There is a *water* radical, and one for *fire*, *wood*, *the hand*, *the moon*, *the sun*, *the foot*, *the heart*, etc. For example, many of the characters for weather conditions have the *rain* radical: the names of many plants and flowers have the *grass* radical; most of the words for movements of the hand have the *hand* radical; vocabulary for feelings and emotions have the *heart* radical. Different methods of cooking all have the *fire* radical, etc. Ideophonograms are characters that contain an element that indicates the meaning (or the **area** of meaning) and a second element that gives the **pronunciation**, or an idea of the pronunciation.

So the word 蝈, *cricket*, is composed of the *insect* radical: 虫; the other element 国 pronounced guó is the phonetic part. *Cricket* is indeed pronounced guó.

The word *ammonia*, 氨, has the *gas* radical: 气 and the phonetic element is 安 ān; “ammonia” is pronounced ān.

*Eel*, 鳗, is composed of the *fish* radical 鱼 and the element 善 that indicates the pronunciation: shàn. *Mother*, 妈, has the *woman* radical 女, and the element 马 giving the pronunciation (apart from the tone!): mā. You will need to remember that 马 is pronounced mǎ, but 妈, *mother* is pronounced mā.

## Writing Tips

- Write each character several times, even tens of times if necessary.
- Do not try to memorize too many characters at a time. It is better to repeat the writing exercises every two or three days and then you will memorize the characters automatically.
- Read out loud the characters that you are writing in order to reinforce your memory. Only use the phonetic transcription when you are unable to remember the pronunciation.
- With the book closed, listen to the recording, and write out each sentence in characters, checking each one to make sure that you have not made any mistakes.

Chinese calligraphy is an art. In China, calligraphers use a brush and ink sticks that have to be ground and mixed with water. However for everyday use, a pen will do, even if it cannot be used to express artistic creativity in the same way.

So, use a pen, or a felt-tip, which should be fine enough to write characters with more than ten strokes in a small square, but soft enough to be able to press down for a wider stroke. Be careful of the number of strokes for each character! Never connect two strokes if they are distinct. Raise your pen between each separate stroke!

Just as you must be careful how to pronounce the tones in spoken Chinese, you must also be very careful, when writing, not to add or subtract a stroke, or to place a stroke carelessly.

For example: compare the differences between

大	dà	<i>big</i>
太	tài	<i>too much</i>
天	tiān	<i>day</i>
夫	fū	<i>husband</i>

or between

大	dà	<i>big</i>
天	tiān	<i>day</i>

or between

千	qiān	<i>thousand</i>
干	gān	<i>dry</i>
十	shí	<i>ten</i>

or between

小	xiǎo	<i>small</i>
少	shǎo	<i>few, a little</i>

or between

白	bái	<i>white</i>
百	bǎi	<i>hundred.</i>

One of the main difficulties of spoken Chinese is the number of homophonic words, or syllables that are pronounced the same way. The ambiguity is erased when the characters are written down.

Here are some examples:

*to be seated*, zuò, is written 坐.

*to do*, also pronounced zuò, is written 做 or 作;

*south*, nán is written 南,

whereas *difficult* also pronounced nán is written 难.

Remember that the order of the strokes is predetermined for every character. You cannot just start where you like, and the direction in which each of the strokes is written is also imposed.

While you are studying, as a memory aid, it is a good idea to write out the most common characters in the margin. This will help you to remember how they are written. So while you turn the pages of *Chinese with Ease* you can also start writing Chinese.

And remember that calligraphy is an ancient art...! Good luck!

The dialogue and the exercises for each lesson are presented in characters; so you will be able to study the characters if you wish and gradually progress as you learn to recognize them in each text.

## How to Use a Chinese Dictionary

In recent dictionaries the characters are usually entered in alphabetical order of their phonetic transcription. But if you meet a character that you cannot pronounce, then you need to know its radical. At the beginning of the dictionary you can consult the list of characters according to their radical. For each radical, the characters are listed by the number of strokes. So you need to count the number of strokes of the character. This is one good reason for not making any mistakes with the strokes when you are writing the characters!

For example the character 說 *shuō*, *to speak*, will be entered under the *word* radical: 讠; and it has 7 other strokes as well as the radical. So in the dictionary, you will find it among the characters with the *word* radical, listed with all the characters that have seven extra strokes.

Practice recognizing the radicals of the characters you meet. Note them down in a vocabulary book, by their radical; in another notebook keep a record of the characters you learn according to their **phonetic transcription** (not forgetting the tone!). In this way, you will also have a note of all the characters you have studied that have the same pronunciation and tone.

At the end of this book there is a list of all the radicals with their meaning. Remember also that in China all writing is in characters, whether it is in the press, in books, on posters and advertisements or letters! So work hard and good luck!

## Note on The Recordings

On the recordings, apart from the introduction to the phonetic transcription, you will also hear the lesson numbers, the titles of the dialogues, the dialogues themselves – read twice during the first two weeks –, the two exercises for each lesson, and the words quoted in certain footnotes.

All these elements, apart from the second exercise for each lesson, are printed in characters and in phonetic transcription.

All the examples presented in the revision lessons at the end of each week are also recorded. You will find a detailed list at the end of each volume, in the Revision Lesson Index.

The dialogues of the first thirteen lessons are read twice.

The first time slowly, so that you can repeat each sentence. The second reading is at the speed of normal speech.

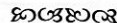


Without the assistance and endless patience of TAN Hsue-mei, without the help of ZHAO Jialing, without the participation of SUN Lixian, PANG Jinsheng and WANG Lu, this work would probably never have seen the light of day.

Their criticisms, their advice (and their voices) were all essential, and my gratitude knows no bounds.

However, there are probably still imperfections; the Chinese language is developing rapidly. You will probably be adding words to the index as soon as you start conversing with Chinese friends!

The Author





The study of Chinese is never-ending.

## Getting Familiar with Chinese Sounds

The introduction to the phonetic transcription is rather lengthy, and probably rather hard-going, but it is absolutely necessary for you to have a good grounding concerning the **sounds unknown** to English speakers, the **tones**, and the conventions of the pinyin alphabet.

The following sounds are read twice on the recording.

### Track 1

a	a
o	o
e	e
i	i
u	u
ü	ü
ie	ie
ei	ei
üe	üe
ai	ai
ou	ou
ia	ia
ua	ua
uo	uo
iao	iao
iu	iu
uai	uai
ui	ui
an	an
en	en
ang	ang
eng	eng
ong	ong
ian	ian
in	in
ing	ing

iang	iang
iong	iong
uan	uan
(w)en	(w)en

### Track 2

uang	uang
(w)eng	(w)eng
(y)uan	(y)uan
(y)un	(y)un

ba	ba
pa	pa
ma	ma
fa	fa

ban	ban
pan	pan
man	man
fan	fan

ba	ba
bei	bei
bian	bian
bu	bu

pa	pa
pai	pai
piao	piao
pu	pu

ma	ma
mao	mao
mai	mai
ming	ming
mian	mian
mu	mu

### Track 3

---

fa	fa
fu	fu
fan	fan
fei	fei
fang	fang

da	da
ta	ta
na	na
la	la

dan	dan
tan	tan
nan	nan
lan	lan

da	da
dai	dai
du	du
duan	duan

ta	ta
tai	tai
tuan	tuan
tui	tui
ting	ting

na	na
nei	nei
nu	nu
niu	niu
nan	nan
la	la

lu	lu
li	li
lian	lian
long	long
luan	luan

gai	gai
kai	kai
hai	hai

### Track 4

---

ga	ga
gai	gai
gu	gu
gan	gan
gei	gei

kou	kou
kao	kao
ken	ken
kai	kai
kong	kong
ku	ku

ha	ha
hu	hu
huan	huan
hen	hen
hai	hai
hong	hong

zai	zai
cai	cai
sai	sai

zai	zai
zuan	zuan
za	za
zui	zui
zi	zi
cai	cai
cu	cu

cuan	cuan
ci	ci

sa	sa
sai	sai
suan	suan
sui	sui
su	su
si	si

### Track 5

---

zhan	zhan
chan	chan
shan	shan
ran	ran

zha	zha
zhe	zhe
zhu	zhu
zhan	zhan
zhi	zhi

cha	cha
chu	chu
chuan	chuan
chi	chi

shu	shu
sha	sha
shuai	shuai
shang	shang
shi	shi

ru	ru
re	re
rou	rou
ruan	ruan
ri	ri

### Track 6

---

er	er
ji	ji
qi	qi
xi	xi

ji	ji
ju	ju
jue	jue

jian	jian
jiu	jiu

qi	qi
qu	qu
que	que

qian	qian
qiu	qiu

xi	xi
xu	xu
xue	xue

xian	xian
xiu	xiu

### Track 7

---

#### First tone

ā	ā
mā	mā
lā	lā

māo	māo
lā	lā
kāi-chē	kāi-chē
guānghuī	guānghuī



**Track 8****Second tone**

má	má
lá	lá
ní	ní
cháng	cháng

qiáliáng	qiáliáng
tóudí	tóudí
cháolíu	cháolíu

géli	géli
cányú	cányú
nán	nán

**Track 9****Third tone**

mǎ	mǎ
lǎ	lǎ
měi	měi
mǎ	mǎ
měi	měi
shǒuzhǎng	shǒuzhǎng

**Track 10****Fourth tone**

mà	mà
là	là
lèi	lèi

kàn	kàn
tiàodòng	tiàodòng
shènglì	shènglì

**Track 11**

zhuōzi	zhuōzi
yízi	yízi
mùtou	mùtou
fángzi	fángzi
lǐlùn	lǐlùn
lǎodiào	lǎodiào
níunǎi	níunǎi
nǚèdài	nǚèdài
luànchuī	luànchuī
lì'àn	lì'àn
liàn	liàn

xǐhuan	xǐhuan
xiǎoxué	xiǎoxué
mǐfàn	mǐfàn
hěn hǎo	hěn hǎo
gǎnlǎn	gǎnlǎn

shì	shì
wǒ shì	wǒ shì
nǐ shì	nǐ shì
hǎo rén	hǎo rén
rén hǎo	rén hǎo

hǎo	hǎo
hǎo	hǎo
rén	rén



# 1 第一课 Dì yī kè

- 1- 你好!  
Nǐ hǎo! ①
- 2- 你好!  
Nǐ hǎo!
- 3- 你饿吗?  
Nǐ è ma? ②
- 4- 我不饿!  
Wǒ bú è! ③
- 5- 你累吗?  
Nǐ lèi ma?
- 6- 我不累!  
Wǒ bú lèi!
- 7- 好! 走!  
Hǎo! Zǒu! ④
- 8- 走!  
Zǒu!

## Notes

- ① *Hello* is nǐ hǎo! [you / good!], or nǐ hǎo ma? [you / good! interrogative?], *how are you*. When a third tone is followed by another third tone, the first one is pronounced as a second tone. Here nǐ hǎo is in fact pronounced ní hǎo!
- ② The interrogative particle ma is always at the **end of the sentence**. The tone is neutral.

# First Lesson number one lesson 1

- 1- Hello!  
*you good!*
- 2- Hello!  
*you good!*
- 3- Are you hungry?  
*you hungry interrogative?*
- 4- No, I'm not.  
*I negative hungry!*
- 5- Are you tired?  
*you tired interr.?*
- 6- No, I'm not.  
*I neg. tired!*
- 7- Well, let's go!  
*good! go!*
- 8- Let's go!  
*go!*



- ③ *Yes* and *no* may be expressed by repeating the verb used in the question. The negative bù is placed just before the verb. When the verb is fourth tone, bù is pronounced as a second tone: bú.
- ④ The imperative is often expressed simply by using only the verb: zǒu! *let's go!* without a personal pronoun. Remember that Chinese characters are invariable and that there are no conjugations! The personal pronoun or the context indicate which person is concerned.

# 1 Exercises

## 练习 Liànxí

- ① 你好!  
Nǐ hǎo!
- ② 你好吗?  
Nǐ hǎo ma?
- ③ 你饿。  
Nǐ è.
- ④ 你不饿。  
Nǐ bú è.
- ⑤ 你不累。  
Nǐ bú lèi.
- ⑥ 我饿。  
Wǒ è.

\*\*\*

### 完成句子

#### Wánchéng jùzi

Complete the sentences

- ① Hello!  
Nǐ . . . !
- ② I'm not hungry.  
Wǒ . . è.
- ③ Are you tired?  
Nǐ lèi . . ?
- ④ Are you hungry?  
Nǐ . ma?

## Exercise 1

- ① Hello! ② How are you? ③ You're hungry. ④ You're not hungry.
- ⑤ You're not tired. ⑥ I'm hungry.

你饿吗?



\*\*\*

- ⑤ How are you?  
Nǐ hǎo . . ?

## Exercise 2

- ① - hǎo ② - bú - ③ - ma ④ - è - ⑤ - ma

*For each lesson, the Chinese text (in characters and pinyin) is on the left hand page. On the right hand page there is the English translation, the word-for-word translation, and the notes. The second part of the lesson is comprised of exercises, with the corrections on the right hand page.*

*Every seventh lesson is a revision lesson to help you check your progress.*

## 2 第二课 Dì èr kè

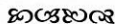
- 1- 要不要饭?  
Yào-bú-yào fàn? ①
- 2- 不要。  
Bú yào. ②
- 3- 要不要汤?  
Yào-bú-yào tāng?
- 4- 不要。  
Bú yào.
- 5- 你要不要菜?  
Nǐ yào-bú-yào cài?
- 6- 我不要。  
Wǒ bú yào.
- 7- 你要什么?  
Nǐ yào shénme? ③
- 8- 我要面包。  
Wǒ yào miànbāo. ④

### Notes

- ① The interrogative can be expressed using the sentence-final particle *ma*, as seen in Lesson 1. One can also use the “alternative” interrogative: the verb is followed by its negative: *yào-bú-yào?* [want / not want?].
- ② In a dialogue the personal pronoun is often omitted when the sense is clear. This is frequently the case when replying to a question about oneself.

## Second Lesson number two lesson 2

- 1 - Would you like something to eat?  
*want neg. want food?*
- 2 - No.  
*neg. want.*
- 3 - Would you like some soup?  
*want neg. want soup?*
- 4 - No.  
*neg. want.*
- 5 - Would you like a cooked dish?  
*you want neg. want dish?*
- 6 - No.  
*I neg. want.*
- 7 - What do you want?  
*you want what?*
- 8 - I would like some bread.  
*I want bread.*



- ③ The interrogative *shénme?* *what?* is placed in the position where the answer is expected. That is to say, after the verb when the question concerns a direct object. Word-for-word: *nǐ yào shénme?* [you / want / what?].
- ④ If you compare the dialogues in Lessons 1 and 2 you can see that there are two sorts of verb in Chinese: action verbs like “to go”, “to run”, “to talk”, “to bite” which can be followed by a complement, and adjectival verbs: like “(to be) tired”, “(to be) hungry”, “(to be) good” which are close to adjectives in English but which also contain a verbal element so they are placed directly after the subject, *wǒ lèi*, *I am tired*.

## 2 Exercises

### 练习

Liànxí

- ① 你要不要汤?  
Nǐ yào-bú-yào tāng?
- ② 你要汤吗?  
Nǐ yào tāng ma?
- ③ 你要什么?  
Nǐ yào shénme?
- ④ 我要什么?  
Wǒ yào shénme?
- ⑤ 我不要面包。  
Wǒ bú yào miànbāo.

\*\*\*

### 完成句子

Wánchéng jùzi

Complete the sentences

- ① Do you want soup?  
Nǐ yào-bú-yào . . . . ?
- ② I don't want soup.  
Wǒ bú . . . tāng.
- ③ Do you want bread?  
Nǐ yào- . . -yào miànbāo?
- ④ What do you want?  
Nǐ yào . . . . . ?
- ⑤ Do you want it?  
. . . yào-bú-yào?

7 • qī

- ⑥ 你要不要面包?  
Nǐ yào-bú-yào miànbāo?

### Exercise 1

① Would you like some soup? ② Do you want some soup? ③ What do you want? ④ What do I want? ⑤ I don't want bread. ⑥ Do you want bread?

你要什么?



\*\*\*

### Exercise 2

① - tāng ② - yào - ③ - bú - ④ - shénme ⑤ nǐ - .

*Advice: To understand and to be understood, you must pronounce the **tones** correctly. An error of pronunciation can create serious confusion: for example 要 yào means to want, but 咬 yǎo means to bite! Be careful of the sound c, which is pronounced tss and is strongly aspirated!*

*If you have the recordings, listen to each lesson several times. In Chinese, more than for any other language, it is really important to pay attention to your **pronunciation**. Whenever possible during your study sessions, speak out loud, and repeat the sentences as if you were learning a tune by heart.*

bā • 8

### 3 第三课 Dì sān kè

- 1- 你买不买书?  
Nǐ mǎi-bù-mǎi shū? ①
- 2- 我不买。  
Wǒ bù mǎi.
- 3- 你买不买笔?  
Nǐ mǎi-bù-mǎi bǐ? ②
- 4- 不买。  
Bù mǎi.
- 5- 你买报吗?  
Nǐ mǎi bào ma? ③
- 6- 也不买!  
Yě bù mǎi! ④
- 7- 那，你要买什么?  
Nà, nǐ yào mǎi shénme? ⑤
- 8- 我要买裤子。  
Wǒ yào mǎi kùzi. ⑥

#### Notes

- ① In Chinese the verb *yào*, *to want*, is not often used in questions. Here, it is sufficient to ask “do you buy books?”, although the sense in English is definitely “do you want to buy books?”
- ② Be careful! Here, as there are two third tones next to each other, the first one is pronounced as a second tone: *mái bǐ*.
- ③ Pay attention to the “half third tone” when a third tone is followed by a first, second or fourth tone syllable. (Here, in *mǎi* )

### Third Lesson number three lesson

- 1- Do you (want to) buy books?  
*you buy neg. buy book?*
- 2- No, I don't.  
*I neg. buy.*
- 3- Do you (want to) buy pens?  
*you buy neg. buy pen?*
- 4- No, I don't.  
*neg. buy.*
- 5- Do you (want to) buy a newspaper?  
*you buy paper interr.?*
- 6- No, I don't (want to) buy (a newspaper) either!  
*also neg. buy!*
- 7- What do you want to buy then?  
*then! you want buy what?*
- 8- I want to buy (a pair of) trousers.  
*I want buy trousers.*



▷ *bào, mǎi* is in fact pronounced as a “half third tone”: the voice descends, as at the start of a third tone, but does not come up again.)

- ④ *yě*, *also*, always comes before the verb. In a negative sentence, “also” comes before the negative and expresses “not... either” or “neither”. Notice how Chinese economizes on the personal pronoun!
- ⑤ *nà!* is an exclamation, it expresses *well then, then, so...* *yào, to want*, can be followed by a noun (to want something) or by a verb (to want to do something). The word order is always: [subject/verb/object]. *shénme?* means *what? which?*
- ⑥ Remember that the letter *i*, after the consonants *z, c, s, zh, ch, sh* and *r*, is not pronounced “ee”, but as a “consonant without a vowel”, something like a “silent e”.

### 3 Exercises

#### 练习 Liànxí

- ① 你要不要买裤子?  
Nǐ yào-bú-yào mǎi kùzi?
- ② 你也要买书吗?  
Nǐ yě yào mǎi shū ma?
- ③ 我也要买报。  
Wǒ yě yào mǎi bào.
- ④ 你也累吗?  
Nǐ yě lèi ma?

\*\*\*

#### 完成句子

#### Wánchéng jùzi

Complete the sentences

- ① Do you want to buy a newspaper?  
Nǐ yào-bú-yào ... bào?
- ② Are you buying (some) too?  
Nǐ ... mǎi ma?
- ③ So, what do you want?  
..., nǐ yào shénme?
- ④ Do you want to buy books too?  
Nǐ yě ... mǎi shū ma?
- ⑤ Do you want to buy pens?  
Nǐ yào mǎi ... ma?

### ⑤ 我也要! Wǒ yě yào!

3

#### Exercise 1

- ① Do you want to buy some trousers? ② Do you want to buy books, too? ③ I want to buy a newspaper too. ④ Are you tired, too? ⑤ I want some, too!



\*\*\*

#### Exercise 2

- ① - mǎi - ② - yě - ③ nà - ④ - yào - ⑤ - bǐ - .

Chinese characters are invariable and therefore have no marker for the plural. It is the context that indicates whether a word is singular or plural, but unlike many other languages, in the absence of any precise indication a Chinese word is more likely to be plural: 书 shū, books; 笔 bǐ, pens.

Remember: when a third tone is followed by a first tone, the first syllable is pronounced as a "half third tone". If you have the recording listen carefully for this rule. (See introduction)

## 4 第四课 Dì sì kè

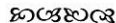
- 1- 他是谁?  
Tā shì shéi? ①
- 2- 他是我父亲。  
Tā shì wǒ fùqin. ②
- 3- 哦! 就是他呀!  
O! jiù shì tā ya! ③
- 4- 你认识他吗?  
Nǐ rènshi tā ma?
- 5- 我见过他。  
Wǒ jiàn-guo tā. ④
- 6- 你见过他?  
Nǐ jiàn-guo tā?
- 7- 是, 我见过他。  
Shì, wǒ jiàn-guo tā. ⑤

### Notes

- ① The verb *shì*, *to be*, nearly always pronounced with the neutral tone: *shì*, is usually followed by a noun. Not to be confused in English with “to be” followed by an adjective. In that case, in Chinese, *shì* is not needed because adjectives in such a position are in fact adjectival verbs, *I am tired* is *wǒ lèi*.  
*tā* means *he* or *him* (and also *she* or *her* as you will find out the day after tomorrow!). ▶

## Fourth Lesson number four lesson 4

- 1- Who is he?  
*he be who?*
- 2- He is my father.  
*he be I father.*
- 3- Oh! So that's who he is!  
*oh! then be he then!*
- 4- Do you know him?  
*you know he interr.?*
- 5- I've seen him before.  
*I see experiential he.*
- 6- Have you seen him before?  
*you see experiential he?*
- 7- Yes, I've already met him!  
*be! I see experiential he.*



- ▶ ② The possessive (genitive) is often expressed, particularly for kinship ties and personal possessions, simply by placing the word for the “owner” before the “possessed” person or thing: *wǒ fùqin*, *my father*.
- ③ The adverb *jiù*, *just*, is used to insist on or accentuate a certain element in a sentence. *ya* is used as an exclamation at the end of a sentence: *oh! then ...! so there!...*, synonymous with the exclamation *ò!*
- ④ The suffix *-guo*, placed after a verb, indicates that an action has been experienced and is often translated into English with the past perfect.
- ⑤ *shì*, with the fourth tone accentuated, is used in certain cases to insist on an affirmative answer: *yes!* or *yes, indeed!...*  
In other cases, *shì* is pronounced with a neutral tone: *shì*.



4 8- 你见过他，那，你认识他！  
Nǐ jiàn-guo tā, nà, nǐ rènshi tā!

9- 不，我不认识他！  
Bù, wǒ bú rènshi tā! □

ཅུ་ཅུ་ཅུ་

### Exercises

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 你是谁？  
Nǐ shi shéi?
- ② 我是你父亲！  
Wǒ shi nǐ fùqin!
- ③ 你认识我吗？  
Nǐ rènshi wǒ ma?

\*\*\*

完成句子

Wánchéng jùzi  
Complete the sentences

- ① Do you know him?  
Nǐ . . . . . tā ma?
- ② Oh! Is that you?  
. ! shi nǐ ma?
- ③ Have I seen (met) you before?  
Wǒ . . . . . nǐ ma?

8- (If) you have already met him, then you (must) know him! 4

*you see experiential he, then, you know he!*

9- No, I don't know him!  
*neg. ! I neg. know he!*

ཅུ་ཅུ་ཅུ་

④ 我见过你！  
Wǒ jiàn-guo nǐ!

⑤ 我不认识你！  
Wǒ bú rènshi nǐ!

### Exercise 1

① Who are you? ② I'm your father! ③ Do you know me? ④ I've seen you before! ⑤ I don't know you!

\*\*\*

④ He isn't my father.  
Tā . . . . . wǒ fùqin.

### Exercise 2

① - rènshi - ② ò - ③ - jiàn-guo - ④ - bú shi -

- 5 Once you have assimilated the conventions of the **Chinese phonetic transcription**, your only difficulty with pronunciation will be the tones.  
Read through the first four lessons again before going on to Lesson 5.  
Repeat the sentences out loud. If you have the recording, listen to it several times.

## 5 第五课 Dì wǔ kè

- 1- 这儿有书吗?  
Zhèr yǒu shū ma? ①
- 2- 没有!  
Méi yǒu! ②
- 3- 这儿有报吗?  
Zhèr yǒu bào ma?
- 4- 没有!  
Méi yǒu!
- 5- 有画报吗?  
Yǒu huàbào ma?
- 6- 也没有!  
Yě méi yǒu! ③
- 7- 有什么?  
Yǒu shénme?



## Fifth Lesson number five lesson 5

- 1 - Are there books here?  
*here have books interr.?*
- 2 - No, there aren't.  
*neg. have!*
- 3 - Are there newspapers here?  
*here have papers interr.?*
- 4 - No, there aren't  
*neg. have!*
- 5 - Are there any magazines?  
*have magazines interr.?*
- 6 - No, there aren't any either!  
*also neg. have!*
- 7 - What is there?  
*have what?*

### Notes

- ① yǒu means *to have* or *there is / are*. It is the only verb that does not take the negative bù. The negative, *have not* or *there is / are not*, is méi yǒu.
- ② *No!* in response to a sentence with the verb yǒu, *to have*, is méi yǒu.
- ③ yě, *also*, in a negative sentence, is translated by *...either*. Adverbs are always placed in front of the verb.

5 8- 这儿不是书店! 是邮局!

Zhèr bú shì shūdiàn! Shì yóujú! ④

9- 哦! 对不起!

O! Duì bu qǐ! ⑤

□

### Notes

- ④ Notice that zhèr, *here*, is not repeated in the second sentence but is understood. ▶

ཨུམ་ཨུམ་

### Exercises

练习

Liànxí

① 这儿有吗?

Zhèr yǒu ma?

② 这儿没有!

Zhèr méi yǒu!

③ 你有书吗?

Nì yǒu shū ma?

④ 我没有书。

Wǒ méi yǒu shū.

⑤ 我也没有。

Wǒ yě méi yǒu.

8- This isn't a bookshop, it's a post office!

*here neg. be bookshop! be post office!*

9- Oh, excuse me!

*oh! excuse me!*

5

- ▶ ⑤ Remember this very useful expression: duì bu qǐ, *please excuse me*, or more simply: *excuse me, sorry!* ò! is the equivalent of *oh!* in English.

ཨུམ་ཨུམ་

### Exercise 1

- ① Are there (some) here? ② There aren't any here! ③ Have you got any books? ④ I haven't any books. ⑤ I haven't any either.

哦! 对不起!



## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

Complete the sentences

- ① Are there newspapers here?  
 . . . . yǒu bào ma?
- ② What is there here?  
 Zhèr yǒu . . . . . ?
- ③ I haven't any either.  
 Wǒ . . méi yǒu.
- ④ Do you have any books?  
 Nǐ . . . shū ma?

\*\*\*

You can now see that in many ways Chinese is not a difficult language: characters are invariable and verbs are not conjugated. However, word order is very important, and determines grammatical functions. In this lesson the only new addition is 有 yǒu and its negative 没有 méi yǒu. Just repeat each lesson several times. Read the dialogues and the exercises out loud and repeat each sentence without looking at the book. You don't necessarily need to understand each new point of grammar as soon as it appears: time is on your side! Gradually you will become accustomed to the use of each element.

ཨོལ་ཤེས་པའི་རྒྱུ་

## Exercise 2

① zhèr - ② - shénme ③ - yě - ④ - yǒu - .



\*\*\*

For memorizing the characters there is **only one way**: read them several times, write them ten times, twenty times, or fifty times if necessary!

This book provides you with a progressive introduction to new problems. Don't worry if you meet a turn of phrase several times before the detailed explanation. It will then seem all the more convincing, because you will already be familiar with it! Let yourself be guided by the advice in the notes, study regularly, 30 minutes a day, and you will learn naturally, without too much effort.

ཨོལ་ཤེས་པའི་རྒྱུ་

- 1 - 他是谁?  
Tā shì shéi? ①
- 2 - 他是老李。  
Tā shì Lǎo Lǐ. ②
- 3 - 我不认识他。  
Wǒ bú rènshi tā.
- 4 - 你认识谁?  
Nǐ rènshi shéi?
- 5 - 我认识老王。  
Wǒ rènshi Lǎo Wáng.
- 6 - 我也认识他!  
Wǒ yě rènshi tā!
- 7 - 他在不在?  
Tā zài-bú-zài? ③
- 8 - 他不在。  
Tā bú zài. ④

## Notes

- ① The personal pronoun in the third person singular is *tā*, *he*, *she*, *it*. So now you know *wǒ*, *nǐ* and *tā*. They can be used as **subject**, at the beginning of a sentence, or as **object**, after the verb.  
*He* and *she* are pronounced the same way: *tā*. However the two characters are different. He has the radical for *person* at the left; for *she*, the part on the left is *woman*. As subject of a sentence *tā* is translated by *he*. As object, it is translated as *him*.  
*wǒ / rènshi / tā*, [I / know / he], *I know him*.

- 1 - Who is he?  
*he be who?*
- 2 - It's Li.  
*he be old Li.*
- 3 - I don't know him.  
*I neg. know he.*
- 4 - Who do you know?  
*you know who?*
- 5 - I know Wang.  
*I know old Wang.*
- 6 - I know him too!  
*I also know he!*
- 7 - Is he here?  
*he at neg. at?*
- 8 - No, he isn't.  
*he neg. at.*



- ② *Lǎo Lǐ*, *Old Li*. In everyday conversation, when polite forms of address are not needed, one does not need to use the full name. Instead a diminutive such as “**Old X**”, “**Young Y**”, “**Little X**”, is sometimes used in front of the family name
- ③ *zài* is verbal and means *to be here*. The alternative interrogative form, where the verb is repeated in the negative, is *zài-bú-zài?* *is... here?*
- ④ Pay attention to pronunciation of tones! In front of a fourth tone syllable the negation *bù* is pronounced with a second tone: *bú*.

## Exercises

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 他是老李吗?  
Tā shì Lǎo Lǐ ma?
- ② 你认识不认识老王?  
Nǐ rènshi-bú-rènshi Lǎo Wáng?
- ③ 老李在不在?  
Lǎo Lǐ zài-bú-zài?
- ④ 他认识不认识你?  
Tā rènshi-bú-rènshi nǐ?
- ⑤ 你是不是老王?  
Nǐ shì-bú-shì Lǎo Wáng?

\*\*\*

## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

Complete the sentences

- ① Who are you?  
Nǐ shì . . . . ?
- ② Does he know you?  
Tā . . . . nǐ ma?
- ③ I know Wang too!  
Wǒ . . rènshi Lǎo Wáng!

The texts in the first lessons are relatively short. From week 2 onwards they become longer. Don't hesitate to go back to a previous

## Exercise 1

- ① Is that Li? ② Do you know Wang? ③ Is Li here? ④ Does he know you? ⑤ Are you Wang?



\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

- ① - shéi ② - rènshi - ③ - yě.

lesson. The first week of study is intended to familiarize you with the **basic sounds** of Chinese. Always try to get your pronunciation correct, and above all respect the tones on each syllable. You now know that a mistake in tone can cause confusion!

Interrogative sentences can be constructed in two different ways: either with the interrogative sentence-final particle 吗 ma (neutral tone), or by repeating the verb in the negative [verb + negative + verb].

There is no difference of meaning between these two constructions. Experience will lead you to choose instinctively which form to use according to the length of the sentence or the context. Note however that the 吗 ma form is used very frequently.

## REVISION AND NOTES

You have now been studying Chinese for one week. It's time to take stock of all the different notions introduced so far. Let's make it a habit to use each seventh lesson for revising the six preceding lessons. It's a good opportunity to make sure that you're keeping on track!

## Read the following notes again

Referring to the text each time: 1st lesson: ①, ②; - 2nd lesson: ①, ③; - 3rd: ②, ⑤; - 4th: ①, ②, ⑤; - 5th: ①, ②, ③; - 6th: ①, ③, ④.

**1** You will have noticed that the same word in Chinese can be translated in several different ways, especially verbs: 是 shì is not only *to be*. 是 shì can be *am, is, it is*, according to the context. It is the sentence as a whole that gives the tense, the mood and the person for the English sentence.

**2** Personal pronouns are not used as much in Chinese as in English: 走! zǒu! *let's go!* 不要! bú yào! *I don't want any!* The pronoun is sometimes used to insist on the person in question, 他是谁? tā shì shéi? *who is he?* etc.

**3 Pronunciation**

Correct pronunciation of the tones is essential! This cannot be stressed enough! You must also pay attention to the **changes of tone**: for the negative 不 bù, change from 不 bù to bú when the following syllable is second tone. When one third tone syllable follows another, the first is pronounced as a second tone.

Most recent rule: a third tone followed by a first, second or fourth tone, is pronounced as a "half third tone", the voice descends to the lowest

point of the third tone but does not come up again: look again at the chart in the introduction in order to visualize this. These three rules of phonetic modification are valid whether the syllables are part of the same word or are two different words that follow each other.

**4** Don't forget the distinction between consonants where expiration must be pronounced forcefully (like the *t* in 汤 tāng, the *c* in 菜 cài, the *k* in 裤子 kùzi, the *q* in 父亲 fùqin), and the "non-aspirated" consonants (like the *z* in 在 zài, the *sh* in 书 shū, or the *b* in 笔 bǐ). As they are not easy to pronounce, these sounds will be introduced gradually. They must be pronounced distinctly, to avoid misunderstanding; notably the consonants *j, q* and *x*: (read twice on the recording) *ji* is similar to "genie", "jean", "gin"; *qi* is between the sound "tchee" and the sound "tsee"; *xi* is between "ship" and "see". You will probably find that practicing your pronunciation needs more time than learning the grammar. Chinese, in itself, is not a difficult language. But **speaking** it properly does require quite an effort!

**5** 有 yǒu, *to be, there is, to have* (the following sounds are read twice on the recording), is the only verb never to use 不 bù as its negation. Its negative is 没有 méi yǒu. You must be careful when translating a sentence into Chinese; this is why our method uses the memorization and assimilation of **complete** sentences and structures in a context, rather than by learning lists of vocabulary by heart! Chinese words have a certain grammatical "freedom". A word can be an adjective in one sentence, a verb in another or an adverb in a third sentence. Pay attention to the position of words in a sentence, and memorize each phrase as a complete unit.

**6 Remember** : after z, c, s, zh, ch, sh and r, i is not pronounced “ee”! It indicates a “non vowel”, like a “silent e”, a consonant without a final vowel: shi, chi, si.

7 Do you remember the pronunciation of the following words (read twice in the recording) 累 lèi 走 zǒu 什么 shénme? 要 yào 谁 shéi and 在 zài? Do you remember what they mean?

**8** Memorize the **tones** as if you were memorizing the **melody** for each sentence! Remember too that the neutral tones are as important as the four other tones. Also the intonation of the complete sentence is important in order to “sound Chinese” when you repeat the text. If you have the recording your ear will become accustomed to Chinese intonations.

**9** Remember that for the syllables with several vowels in the transcription, the final “i” is silent: shei is pronounced “shay”. zai is pronounced “dzey(e)”. Pay attention to nasal consonants: The final “g” is not stressed and serves only to distinguish “an” as in the name “Ann”, and the “ang” of “Wang”.

**10** You will have noticed that the lessons are numbered in a relatively simple way: *lesson* is 课 kè. A cardinal number becomes an ordinal number by placing 第 dì in front; so: *one lesson* is 一课 yī kè and *the first lesson, lesson 1* is 第一课 dì yī kè.

**11** Simple sentences follow the [subject/verb/complement] construction 我认识他 wǒ rènshi tā, *I know him*; 他是谁? tā shi shéi? *who is he?* [he/be/who?]. We have also met a special category of verbs: **adjectival verbs**. These are adjectives which are also verbs, and as such are placed immediately after the subject: 我累 wǒ lèi, *I (am) tired*; 我饿 wǒ è, *I (am) hungry*.

**12 Second Wave exercise.** When you reach lesson fifty, you will be asked to return to take up the first lesson again in an active way and to translate the English text into spoken and written Chinese. This is what is called **Second Wave**. After the day’s lesson, you will return one by one to the lessons at the beginning of the book. Some of these have Second Wave exercises; this means you will only do them in writing during the Second Wave. For now, just read through the exercises and the corrections.

And when you get to the hundredth lesson, you will still have the fifty last lessons to study in the “active way”, to finish the Second Wave.

### 13 Translation

- 1 Do you (want) to buy some books?
- 2 Him, he’s my father!
- 3 I don’t know him.
- 4 Is your father here?
- 5 Would you like some soup?

### 14 Answers to Second Wave exercises

- |             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| 1 你买不买书?    | Nǐ mǎi-bù-mǎi shū? or     |
| 你买书吗?       | Nǐ mǎi shū ma?            |
| 2 他是我父亲!    | Tā shi wǒ fùqin!          |
| 3 我不认识他。    | Wǒ bú rènshi tā.          |
| 4 你父亲在不在这儿? | Nǐ fùqin zài-bú-zài zhèr? |
| 5 你要不要汤?    | Nǐ yào-bú-yào tāng?       |

*Lesson numbers, titles, dialogues and the first exercise always appear in Chinese characters. For the revision lessons (multiples of seven) all the words are in characters and pinyin. All these elements are on the recording, as well as the fixative exercise and the words included in certain remarks at the end of the lessons.*

*To memorize the writing of the characters, there is only one method! Cover the phonetic transcription and practice reading the dialogue out loud. Then write each character at least twenty times!*

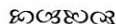


- 1- 去吃饭，好不好？  
Qù chī fàn, hǎo-bù-hǎo? ①
- 2- 好！  
Hǎo!
- 3- 你饿不饿？  
Nǐ è-bù-è?
- 4- 我不太饿！  
Wǒ bú tài è! ②
- 5- 你想吃什么？  
Nǐ xiǎng chī shénme? ③
- 6- 吃面，行不行？  
Chī miàn, xíng-bù-xíng? ④⑤
- 7- 行！去吃饭！  
Xíng! Qù chī miàn! □

## Notes

- ① Again you can see here that according to the context the personal pronoun is not necessary. Word-for-word, chī-fàn means *to eat (chī) / cooked rice (fàn)*, but in general it simply means, [to eat / food], *to eat*.
- ② è means *to be hungry* and comes straight after the subject. The negative bù comes just before the verb. As for the adverb tài, *too, very*, it comes between the negative and the verb (and so just before the verb when it is not in the negative). tài can only directly modify the sense of **adjectival verbs** (too fast, too expensive, too / to be hungry, too / to be tired). **Never** use it directly before an action verb. ▶

- 1- Shall we go to eat?  
*go eat food, good neg. good?*
- 2- Yes, let's!  
*good!*
- 3- Are you hungry?  
*you hungry neg. hungry?*
- 4- No. I'm not very hungry!  
*I neg. too hungry!*
- 5- What would you like to eat?  
*you wish eat what?*
- 6- What about noodles?  
*eat noodle, ok neg. ok?*
- 7- Fine! Let's go and have some noodles!  
*ok! go eat noodle!*



- ③ xiǎng, *to want to, to wish...* is always followed by an action verb; it is in fact *to want (to do something)*. The ǚ only indicates the nasalization of the vowel.
- ④ Here we have the verb chī, *to eat*, and not chī-fàn, because the discussion is about **what is to be eaten**, and miàn, *noodles*, replaces fàn, *rice*, as a complement. Attention: do not stress the final n!
- ⑤ xíng, *OK, that's fine, I agree, it's agreed*, is a very common word. It's the same for bù xíng, *it's not possible, I disagree, it won't work*. The interrogative is: xíng-bù-xíng? or xíng ma? *is that alright? is that OK? do you agree?*

## Exercises

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 好不好?  
Hǎo-bù-hǎo?
- ② 你想不想吃?  
Nǐ xiǎng-bù-xiǎng chī?
- ③ 你去不去吃饭?  
Nǐ qù-bù-qù chī-fàn?
- ④ 我不太累。  
Wǒ bú tài lèi.
- ⑤ 你要吃什么?  
Nǐ yào chī shénme?

\*\*\*

## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

Complete the sentences

- ① I'm going to go and eat too.  
Wǒ yě qù . . . . .
- ② Does he want to eat noodles?  
Tā . . . . .-bù- . . . . . chī miàn?
- ③ Have you been here before?  
. . . . ., nǐ lái-guó ma?
- ④ Is it alright if you don't eat?  
Nǐ bù . . . . . xíng-bù- . . . . .?

## Exercise 1

- ① Is this OK? ② Would you like to eat? ③ Are you going to go and eat?  
④ I'm not too tired. ⑤ What would you like to eat?



\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

- ① - chī-fàn ② - xiǎng - xiǎng - ③ zhèr - ④ - chī-fàn - xíng

**Referring.** If you have a problem with a turn of phrase, a word or the transcription, underline the difficulty. Turn several pages forwards and make a mark in the margin referring to the page in question. In a few days when you reach the mark, you may find that the difficulty has been resolved by repetition in the following lessons where an explanation has been provided.

If the difficulty persists, refer again to it with another mark several pages further on.

Once again this lesson shows us that Chinese is always as concise as possible, particularly in the dialogues where the speakers only use pronouns when it is absolutely essential to the sense: 吃面 chī miàn! let's eat noodles! is one example. You will meet many others in the following lessons.

Your attention should be fixed on the **Chinese**, on the characters and on the pinyin transcription which includes the tones, they deserve your greatest attention!

## 9 第九课 Dì jiǔ kè

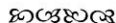
- 1- 你住在这儿吗?  
Nǐ zhù-zài zhèr ma? ①
- 2- 是!  
Shì! ②
- 3- 这儿房子好不好?  
Zhèr fángzi hǎo-bù-hǎo?
- 4- 很好!  
Hěn hǎo! ③
- 5- 安静不安静?  
Ānjìng-bù-ānjìng? ④
- 6- 很安静!  
Hěn ānjìng!

### Notes

- ① *To live in, at* is zhù-zài, and is followed directly by the place. wǒ zhù-zài zhèr, *I live here*; tā yě zhù-zài zhèr, *he also lives here*. Careful about your pronunciation! Get the tones right! Here there are two fourth tone syllables: from high to low: zhù-zài (“djoodzaye”). zhèr means *here*, and can be subject (zhèr / hěn hǎo, [here / very good]) or adverb (wǒ zhù-zài zhèr, [I / to live in / here]).
- ② In answer to a question constructed with the final particle ma, and when the answer confirms the question, use the verb *to be*, ▶

## Ninth Lesson number nine lesson 9

- 1- Do you live here?  
*you reside here interr.?*
- 2- Yes!  
*be!*
- 3- Are the houses (apartments) nice here?  
*here house good neg. good?*
- 4- Yes, very nice!  
*very good!*
- 5- Is it quiet?  
*quiet neg. quiet?*
- 6- Yes, very quiet!  
*very quiet!*



- ▶ shì, pronounced emphatically in the fourth tone, meaning: *yes! that's right! quite right! that's true!* Sometimes the word duì! (pronounced “dooy”) is used meaning *exactly! that's true! that's right!* Note the expression duì-bù-duì? *is that so? is that right? am I right?*
- ③ Adjectival verbs are often preceded by the adverb hěn, *very*. However, in many cases, this frequent use of *very* means that hěn has lost some of its force: hěn hǎo! *that's good!* or *that's very good!* according to the intonation.
- ④ With this sentence as an example, it isn't difficult to make a question in Chinese, is it? hǎo-bù-hǎo? *is it good?* ānjìng-bù-ānjìng? *is it quiet?* duì-bù-duì? *is it correct? is it right?*

- 9 7- 你先生也住在这儿吗?  
Nǐ xiānsheng yě zhù-zài zhèr ma? ⑤
- 8- 幸亏他不住在这儿!  
Xìngkuī tā bú zhù-zài zhèr! ⑥ □

### Notes

⑤ xiānsheng means *Mr.*, and also *husband, person, individual*. For *husband* you will also hear zhàngfu. The synonym lǎogong, is a “spoken” and “popular slang” expression. The word àiren is a bit old fashioned and refers to husband or wife. The personal pronoun tā (item 8) is *he* and not *she*. These two personal pronouns are pronounced the same, but in *she*, the left side of the

\*\*\*

### Exercises

#### 练习

#### Liànxí

- ① 他对不对?  
Tā duì-bú-duì?
- ② 我很累。  
Wǒ hěn lèi.
- ③ 这儿房子好不好?  
Zhèr fángzi hǎo-bù-hǎo?
- ④ 这儿安静不安静?  
Zhèr ānjìng-bù-ānjìng?
- ⑤ 他也住在这儿吗?  
Tā yě zhù-zài zhèr ma?

- 7- Does your husband live here too?  
*you husband also reside here interr.?*
- 8- No, fortunately he doesn't live here!  
*good thing he neg. reside here!*

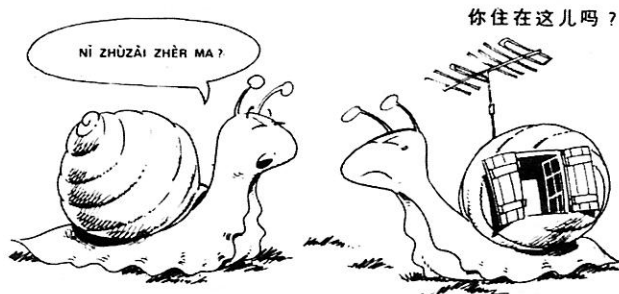
ㄟㄨㄛㄨㄛ

- ▶ character is the *woman* radical, whereas for *he* it is the *person* radical. Once again remember to study the characters carefully. As you can see the differences are very important!
- ⑥ xìngkuī means *luckily...!* it's a good thing that fortunately...  
xìngkuī yǒu! *luckily there is some!* xìngkuī wǒ bú lèi! *fortunately I'm not tired!*  
Before a fourth tone, bù is pronounced in the second tone: bú.

\*\*\*

### Exercise 1

- ① Is he right? ② I'm very tired. ③ Is the accommodation good here?  
④ Is it quiet here? ⑤ Does he live here too?



## 10 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

Complete the sentences

- ① Luckily there is bread here!  
..... zhèr yǒu miànbāo!
- ② I live here too!  
Wǒ yě ... .. zhèr!
- ③ It's not very quiet here!  
Zhèr bù hěn .....!
- ④ That's right!  
Hěn ...!

## 10 第十课 Dì shí kè

- 1- 冷不冷?  
Lěng-bù-lěng? ①
- 2- 不冷!  
Bù lěng!
- 3- 你出去吗?  
Nǐ chūqu ma?
- 4- 出去!  
Chūqu! ②

## Notes

- ① lěng is an adjectival verb: *to be cold*. The impersonal: hěn lěng! is used for *it's cold*, meaning the weather: wǒ bù lěng! *I'm not cold*, Běijīng hěn lěng, (*the weather in*) Peking is very cold. ▶

## Exercise 2

① xìngkui - ② - zhù-zài - ③ - ānjīng ④ - duì

*During this second week of study, the texts are quite short and the sentences fairly simple. Only five or six new words have been added for each lesson so that you are not overworked! If you find a point difficult, don't hesitate to go back and read the previous lessons. A word on writing the characters: it is only by reading and rereading the same sentences, the same words and the same characters that you will be able to memorize the characters without too much effort. Of course this is if you wish to **read and write**, as well as to **understand and speak**.*

## Tenth Lesson number ten lesson 10

- 1- Is it cold?  
*cold neg. cold?*
- 2- No, it's not!  
*neg. cold!*
- 3- Are you going out?  
*you exit go interr.?*
- 4- Yes, I am!  
*exit go!*

ㄅㄨㄟㄅㄨㄟ

- ▶ ② A laconic answer: *Yes!* is expressed by repeating the verb, in the affirmative, without the need for a personal pronoun. Be careful of your pronunciation! In chu, “u” indicates the “oo” sound as in “food”, and in qu, the “u” indicates the “u” as in the French “rue”. The “oo” sound does not exist after the consonants j, q and x. If you are not sure about this read the introduction again concerning phonetics.

- 5- 你去哪儿?  
Nǐ qù nǎr? ③
- 6- 去买报!  
Qù mǎi bào!
- 7- 买什么报?  
Mǎi shénme bào? ④
- 8- 买“新晚报”!  
Mǎi «Xīn Wǎn Bào»! ⑤

□

## Notes

- ③ Here is *qù*, meaning *to go*. In the previous sentence, *chūqù* is a composed of *chū*, *to go out*, and *qù*, *to go*. *nǎr* is the interrogative *where?* *in what place?* It is used here as a complement after the verb.
- ④ You have met *shénme* meaning *what?* (see lesson 2, note 3). Here it has the meaning *which*, and is followed by a noun: *shénme bào?* *which newspaper?* *shénme shū?* *which book?*

\*\*\*

## Exercises

## 练习

Liànxí

- ① 你冷不冷?  
Nǐ lěng-bù-lěng?
- ② 你出去不出去?  
Nǐ chūqu-bù-chūqu?
- ③ 他去哪儿?  
Tā qù nǎr?

41 • si-shí-yī

- 5- Where are you going?  
*you go where?*
- 6- I'm going to buy a newspaper!  
*go buy paper!*
- 7- Which paper are you going to buy?  
*buy what paper?*
- 8- I'm going to buy the "New Evening Paper"!  
*buy new evening paper!*

新晚报

- ⑤ *xīn*, *new*; *wǎn*, *evening*. Adjectives are always placed **before** the noun.  
Read the introduction to phonetics again if you think you may have forgotten the equivalent sounds for the Chinese transcription. *bào*, *newspaper*. You may also take note of the expression *dàzìbào*, word-for-word: [large / characters newspaper], *hand written poster*, *wall poster*.

\*\*\*

- ④ 他住在哪儿?  
Tā zhù-zài nǎr?
- ⑤ 他买什么报?  
Tā mǎi shénme bào?

## Exercise 1

- ① Are you cold? ② Are you going out? ③ Where is he going?  
④ Where does he live? ⑤ What newspaper does he buy?

si-shí-èr • 42

## Wánchéng jùzi

Complete the sentences

- ① It isn't very cold.  
Bù ... lěng.
- ② Do you want to go out?  
Nǐ yào ..... ma?
- ③ Where is he going?  
Tā .. nǎr ?
- ④ Are you going to buy the newspaper?  
Nǐ qù ... .. ma?

\*\*\*

You will have noticed the numbering in Chinese at the beginning of each lesson: 第 dì is added before the number: 第十课 dì shí kè, tenth lesson, Lesson 10, 十 shí meaning ten and 课 kè meaning lesson. Refer to the chapter headings of the first ten lessons and make sure that you are familiar with the numbers one to ten (if not, you will be in a few days!). Now you can look out for numbers over ten: you will see that the system is very simple!



## Exercise 2

① - hěn - ② - chūqu - ③ - qù - ④ - mǎi bào - .

冷不冷 ?



\*\*\*

Remember to read the notes. They are not complicated grammatical explanations, but they do include elements that will help you to understand the constructions used in the lesson. If you have the recording, remember that the dialogues are recorded twice for Lessons 1 to 14!



# 11 第十一课 Dì shí-yī kè

- 1- 她是你妹妹吗?  
Tā shì nǐ mèimei ma? ①
- 2- 不是! 她是我朋友!  
Bú shì! Tā shì wǒ péngyou! ②③
- 3- 她也是中国人吗?  
Tā yě shì Zhōngguó rén ma?
- 4- 是!  
Shì! ④
- 5- 她先生也在 中国 吗?  
Tā xiānsheng yě zài Zhōngguó ma?
- 6- 当然!  
Dāngrán! ⑤

## Notes

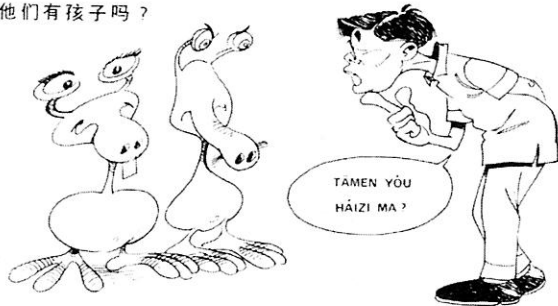
- ① You have seen that, for kinship ties, the possessive is often expressed simply by placing the “reference” person before the relative in question (see lesson 4, note 2). mèimei, *younger sister*; jiějie, *older sister*; gēge, *older brother*; dìdì, *younger brother*.
- ② *No!* is expressed by repeating the sentence, or the verb from the previous sentence, in the **negative**. Before a fourth tone, bù is pronounced bú!
- ③ Remember your pronunciation! “p” pronounced by blowing out a lot of air!
- ④ *Yes!* is expressed by repeating the verb from the question or from the previous sentence in the affirmative.

# Eleventh Lesson number ten-one lesson 11

- 1- Is she your younger sister?  
*she be you younger sister interr.?*
- 2- No, she isn't! She's my friend!  
*neg. be! she be I friend!*
- 3- Is she Chinese too?  
*she also be China person interr.?*
- 4- Yes!  
*be!*
- 5- Is her husband also in China?  
*she husband also be at China interr.?*
- 6- Of course he is!  
*of course!*

他们 有 孩子 吗 ?

他们有孩子吗 ?



- ⑤ *Of course! that's so!* be careful to pronounce the tones properly! First tone for dāng and second tone on rán. Be careful, the “d” is sharper than an English “d”, between the “d” in “die” and the “t” in “tie”. The “r” is pronounced like a final “r” in English, as in “flower”.  
As a verb zài, *to be in...*, is followed by a place.



- 11 7 - 他们有孩子吗?  
Tāmen yǒu hái'zi ma?
- 8 - 有!  
Yǒu!
- 9 - 有几个?  
Yǒu jǐ-ge? ⑥
- 10 - 我不知道!  
Wǒ bù zhīdào! ⑦

□

### Notes

- ⑥ jǐ-ge means *how many...?* but you will see later that there are several ways of asking "how many...?", according to the **noun** being "counted". For the moment just remember jǐ-ge hái'zi? *how many children?*

\*\*\*

### Exercises

#### 练习 Liànxí

- ① 他是不是你哥哥?  
Tā shì-bú-shì nǐ gēge?
- ② 他也住在这儿吗?  
Tā yě zhù-zài zhèr ma?
- ③ 他有几个哥哥?  
Tā yǒu jǐ-ge gēge?
- ④ 你知道不知道?  
Nǐ zhīdào-bù-zhīdào?

- 7 - Have they any children?  
*they have children interr.?*
- 8 - Yes, they have!  
*have!*
- 9 - How many?  
*have how many classifier?*
- 10 - I don't know!  
*I neg. know!*

☞☞☞☞☞

- ▶ ⑦ wǒ bù zhīdào! *I don't know!* [I / neg. / know]. tā zhīdào ma?  
*does he know?*

\*\*\*

### Exercise 1

- ① Is he your older brother? ② Does he live here too? ③ How many older brothers has he? ④ Do you know (about it)?

## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

Complete the sentences

- ① Is he your friend?  
Tā shì nǐ ..... ma?
- ② Does your wife live here too?  
Nǐ ..... yě zhù-zài zhèr ma?
- ③ How many children have they got?  
Tāmen yǒu . . . . háizi?
- ④ Have you got children too?  
Nǐ . . yǒu háizi ma?

Remember to read the number of each lesson in Chinese. All the numbers up to 99 are made up of the numbers you already know, i.e. one to ten. You will have noticed that “eleven” is “ten-one” i.e. ten/plus/one.

## 12 第十二课 Dì shí-èr kè

- 1- 这个书包好不好?  
Zhèi-ge shūbāo hǎo-bù-hǎo? ①
- 2- 很好! 这个颜色很好!  
Hěn hǎo! Zhèi-ge yánsè hěn hǎo!

## Notes

- ① zhèi-ge, *this*. This demonstrative adjective is composed of zhèi and a particle, here ge, which can vary according to the noun that follows. For the moment just remember ge, which is

## Exercise 2

① - péngyǒu - ② - àiren - ③ - jǐ-ge - ④ - yě -

There are many new words in this lesson. You don't need to try to learn them all by heart. You will remember them automatically as you meet them again. In spoken Chinese you will have noticed that they, them is 他们 tāmen. He, 他 tā or she, 她 tā becomes they, 他们 tāmen or 她们 tāmen by adding the plural indication, 们 men, to the singular personal pronoun. 我们 wǒmen and 你们 nǐmen are constructed in the same way.

哥哥 gēgē means older brother. 中国 Zhōngguó means China, 中 zhōng, middle, 国 guó, country. In Chinese, adjectives come before the noun, as in English. The names of countries are usually formed with a first character, symbolizing the country (often the first syllable of the phonetic transcription) and the character 国 guó. England, 英国 Yīngguó; France, 法国 Fǎguó.

## Twelfth Lesson number ten-two lesson 12

- 1 - Is this a good satchel?  
*this classifier satchel good neg. good?*
- 2 - Yes, it is! It's a nice colour!  
*very good! this classifier colour very good!*



- ▶ the most common. In the coming days you will find out more about these particles called “classifiers”. You have already met jǐ-ge, *how many...?* followed by a noun.

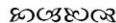
- 3- 你喜欢不喜欢?  
Nǐ xǐhuan-bù-xǐhuan? ②
- 4- 很漂亮!  
Hěn piàoliang! ③
- 5- 我买一个, 好不好?  
Wǒ mǎi yí-ge, hǎo-bù-hǎo? ④
- 6- 你想买就买吧!  
Nǐ xiǎng mǎi jiù mǎi ba! ⑤⑥
- 7- 贵吗?  
Guì ma?
- 8- 不贵! 可是没有大的!  
Bú guì! Kěshì méi yǒu dà-de!
- 9- 怎么办?  
Zěnme bàn?
- 10- 买小的吧!  
Mǎi xiǎo-de ba! ⑦

□

## Notes

- ② Unlike some languages, Chinese, like English, has separate words for “like” and “love”. The meaning here is clearly *to like* or *to appreciate*.
- ③ Be careful to blow out some air with the “p” in piàoliang!
- ④ yí-ge means *one*. A number is **rarely** followed directly by a noun. The **classifier** usually comes between the number and the noun. The classifier varies according to the type of object. Here you have **ge**, which is the most common classifier (see note 1).
- ⑤ An equivalent to jiù would be: *then, well then...* The conditional is understood, as is often the case in Chinese when the sense is evident. The construction is always as concise as possible!

- 3- Do you like it?  
*you like neg. like?*
- 4- It looks really good!  
*very beautiful!*
- 5- Shall I buy one?  
*I buy one class., good neg. good?*
- 6- If you want it, buy it!  
*you wish buy then buy suggestion!*
- 7- Is it expensive?  
*expensive interr.?*
- 8- It's not expensive, but there aren't any big ones!  
*neg. expensive! but neg. have big de!*
- 9- What can I do?  
*how do?*
- 10- Buy a small one!  
*buy small de suggestion!*



- ⑥ The sentence-final particle **ba** expresses an invitation, generally rendered in English with the **imperative**: *well then... + imperative*.
- ⑦ dà-de, *big ones*; xiǎo-de, *small ones*. The subjects here are understood. The adjectives dà, *big* or xiǎo, *small*, do not usually come directly before the noun. The nominalizing particle **de** comes between the adjective and the noun (understood here). In the following lessons you will meet other uses of the nominalizing particle **de**. guì-de, *an expensive one*; bù guì de, *a cheap one*. bù guì de fángzi, *a cheap apartment*. You can also take note of: hǎo-de shū, *a good book*; hǎo-de, *a good one*; piàoliang-de shūbāo, *a pretty school bag*; piàoliang-de, *a beautiful one*; dà-de fángzi, *a big house*; dà-de, *a big one*. The adjective always comes before the noun!

## 练习

Liànxí

- ① 这个，贵不贵？  
Zhèi-ge, guì-bú-guì?
- ② 我不饿，可是我很累！  
Wǒ bú è, kěshì wǒ hěn lèi!
- ③ 你想吃就吃吧！  
Nǐ xiǎng chī jiù chī ba!
- ④ 你爱人很漂亮！  
Nǐ àiren hěn piàoliang!

\*\*\*

## 完成句子

Wánchéng jùzi

Complete the sentences

- ① Is this child tired?  
..... háizi lèi-bú-lèi?
- ② This dish is not expensive.  
Zhèi-ge cài .....
- ③ It's beautiful, but it's very expensive!  
Piàoliang, ..... hěn guì!
- ④ I've got small ones, but I haven't any big ones.  
Wǒ yǒu ....., kěshì méi yǒu .....

## Exercise 1

① Is this expensive? ② I'm not hungry, but I'm very tired! ③ If you want to eat some, go ahead! ④ Your wife is very good looking!



\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

① zhèi-ge - ② - bú guì ③ - kěshì - ④ - xiǎo-de - dà-de.

*Certain points of grammar are only mentioned briefly. Some elements that may still seem obscure will be presented again in the coming days. On the third or fourth meeting they will already be familiar to you and a complete explanation will be given. Be patient and study regularly, for fifteen minutes a day. Let the method guide you forwards and your level will improve with ease.*

*Be careful of the tones. Chinese is a **tonal language**, and the tone of a word must be respected, as indicated in the pinyin!*

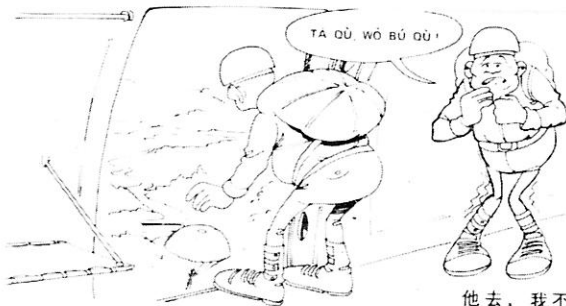
- 1- 她是谁?  
Tā shì shéi?
- 2- 她是我太太。  
Tā shì wǒ tàitai. ①
- 3- 她做什么?  
Tā zuò shénme? ②
- 4- 她是翻译。  
Tā shì fānyì.
- 5- 她会英语吗?  
Tā huì yīngyǔ ma? ③
- 6- 当然! 她会英语!  
Dāngran! Tā huì yīngyǔ! ④

Notes

- ① Remember that for kinship ties, the genitive can be expressed by simply placing the possessor before the noun. Elsewhere the nominalizing particle *de*, seen above, comes in between. Learn to distinguish between the two characters *he* and *she* (both pronounced *tā*!)
- ② For *zuò*, you will meet two different characters, 做 and 作, both pronounced *zuò* and both meaning *to do*. The first one, 做, is used for practical movements, whereas the second one, 作, is more likely to be for abstractions.
- ③ *yīngyǔ*, *the English language*, *yǔ* means *language*, and *yīng* is the abbreviation of *Yīnggélán*, the Chinese transcription of ▶

- 1- Who is she?  
*she be who?*
- 2- She's my wife!  
*she be I wife.*
- 3- What does she do?  
*she do what?*
- 4- She is a translator.  
*she be translate.*
- 5- Does she know English?  
*she know how English interr.?*
- 6- Of course she does!  
*of course! she know how English!*

他 去 不 去 ?



他去, 我不去!

- ▶ England. You will also meet *Yīngguó* for *England*, *guó* means *country* (See lesson 11). *Měiguó* means *America*.
- ④ *huì*, *to know how, to have learned to*, also means “to know how to speak a language”, and can be followed directly by the name of the language. *huì yīngyǔ*, *to know how to speak English*.

- 7- 她也会汉语吗?  
Tā yě huì hànyǔ ma? ⑤
- 8- 会一点儿。  
Huì yìdiǎnr. ⑥
- 9- 你呢?  
Nǐ ne? ⑦
- 10- 我会说, 不会写。  
Wǒ huì shuō, bú huì xiě. ⑧

## Notes

- ⑤ hànyǔ, *the Chinese language*, the language of the Hànr, people who make up 93 % of the population. There is also the term zhōngwén, meaning the written or spoken language (see exercises). You will sometimes also meet the term guóyǔ, *national language* or pǔtōnghuà, *common tongue*, for Mandarin Chinese.
- ⑥ The adverb yìdiǎnr, placed directly after a verb, means *a little* and attenuates the meaning of the verb. In Beijing, it is pronounced yìdiǎnr (pronounce it “ee dee’er”).

\*\*\*

## Exercises

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 你做什么?  
Nǐ zuò shénme?
- ② 你会不会说中文?  
Nǐ huì-bú-huì shuō zhōngwén?
- ③ 我吃饭, 不吃面。  
Wǒ chī fàn, bù chī miàn.

- 7- Does she also know Chinese?  
*she also know how Chinese interr.?*
- 8- A little.  
*know how a little.*
- 9- And you?  
*you ne?*
- 10- I can speak it, but I don't know how to write it.  
*I know how speak, neg. know how write.*

\*\*\*

- ⑦ With the sentence-final interrogative particule *ne*, it is not necessary to repeat the question answered by the previous sentence. *nǐ ne? and you? and what about you? tā ne? and him? wǒ ne? what about me?...*
- ⑧ In this sentence, where there are two contrasting clauses, the idea of opposition, even though it is not stated explicitly, is quite clear in Chinese. So it is translated using “... but ...”  
Note also: *tā mǎi, wǒ bù mǎi, he is buying (some), but I am not buying (any)*; and also *tā qù, wǒ bú qù, he's going, but I'm not.*

\*\*\*

- ④ 你朋友也会英语吗?  
Nǐ péngyou yě huì yīngyǔ ma?

## Exercise 1

- ① What do you do? ② Can you speak Chinese? ③ I eat rice, (but) I don't eat noodles. ④ Can your friend speak English too?

## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

Complete the sentences

- ① What does your wife do?  
Nǐ àiren ... shénme?
- ② Can he speak Chinese?  
Tā ... zhōngwén ma?
- ③ I know how to write too.  
Wǒ yě huì ...
- ④ And you? I know a little too.  
Nǐ .. ? Wǒ yě huì .....

\*\*\*

Only the first syllable of the word 太太 tàitai, wife is stressed (4th tone). 妻子 qīzi is another slightly more elegant term, as is 夫人 fūren. 老婆 lǎopo is a familiar slang word.

The personal pronouns 他, he, and 她, she, are both pronounced

## 14 第十四课 Dì shí-sì kè

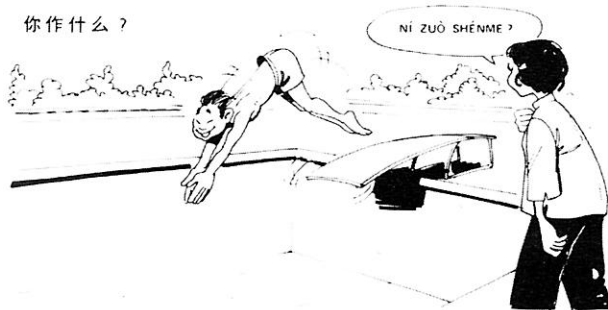
## REVISION AND NOTES

After this second week of study, you are now able to **understand** and **repeat** some useful short sentences. The sounds that have been introduced are very varied because in the thirteen lessons you have covered ninety-four different syllables of modern Chinese. You will often need to repeat them again in order to memorize them properly, and the next two weeks will be spent going over the sounds you have already met, while also getting to know other syllables.

## Exercise 2

① - zuò - ② - huì - ③ - xiě ④ - ne - yidian.

你做什么？



\*\*\*

tā, but they are written with a different radical. Remember that this method concentrates on **spoken Chinese**, and the texts in characters are also presented with their phonetic transcription. Any ambiguity is eliminated when the sentence is written in characters.

## Fourteenth Lesson number ten-four lesson 14

Don't hesitate to go back over the previous lessons, and always pay **attention** to the **tones**, which are your **key** to understanding and to being understood.

## Read the notes again

8th lesson: ②, ③ - 9th: ①, ②, ③, ④ - 10th: ①, ④ - 11th: ②, ③, ⑤ - 12th: ①, ④, ⑥, ⑦ - 13th: ①, ⑤, ⑥.

Are you sure that you have understood the transcription? To make certain, say the following sounds out loud and if you are not sure of your pronunciation, go back to the lesson where the sound was introduced (or to the introduction at the beginning of the book). On the recording, they are all read twice.

-1- zhi, chi, shi; zi, ci, si; zhì, chì, shì; zì, cì, sì. rì  
(Be careful! The “i” is a “non-vowel”, a “silent e”.)

-2- yao, ye, you, yan, ying

(Remember that yan is pronounced “yen”).

-3- ji, qi, xi; zhe, zhei, zhong; xi, xiao, xie, xin, xiang, xing  
(Remember there is no stress on the final “n” or “ng” in the nasal consonants).

-4- Read the following out loud, taking care with your pronunciation and tones: bàn, bào, bǐ, bù; piāo, péng; mǎi, méi, miàn; dà, dào, dāng, diǎn, duì

(Do not stress the final “n”!)

-5- Be careful with the pronunciation of 一点儿 yidiǎnr, a little (pronounced “ee dee’er”).

2 You will soon distinguish clearly between **action** verbs and **adjectival** verbs. 做 and 作 zuò, to do, 去 qù, to go, 吃 chī, to eat, are action verbs. They can be followed by a complement: 作翻译 zuò fānyì, to do a translation, 去中国 qù Zhōngguó, to go to China, 吃面 chī miàn, to eat noodles. Adjectival verbs seem close to “adjectives”; however they also have a “verbal force”, which means that they come **directly** after the subject, without needing any auxiliary. And they cannot take an object: 我很累 wǒ hěn lèi, I’m very tired; 这个很贵 zhè-ge hěn guì, that’s very expensive; 你爱人很漂亮 nǐ àiren hěn piàoliang, your wife is very pretty; 这儿很冷 zhèr hěn lěng, it’s very cold here.

3 You have met 要 yào, to want, to wish, 会 huì, to know how to, 想 xiǎng, to want to, three verbs that can take a verbal complement, which can even be a complete clause. You will be learning other verbs of this type, which express a **possibility** or a **wish**. They are called “optative” verbs. As for 去 qù, to go, it can also be followed by a verb: 去吃饭 qù chī fàn, to go to eat, 去买菜 qù mǎi cài, to go shopping, word-for-word: [go / buy / vegetables].

4 There is no word for *yes*. An affirmative answer to a question generally uses repetition of the verb in the question. To answer *no!* you should use the negative 不 bù in general and 没有 méi yǒu if the question uses the verb “to have” but you should also repeat the verb in the question in the negative: *No! I’m not going!* is 不! 我不去 bù! wǒ bú qù; *no! it’s not very cold!* is 不! 不很冷! bù! bù hěn lěng!

Remember to pronounce 不 bù with a second tone bú in front of a fourth tone syllable: 我不去 wǒ bú qù, I’m not going.

## 5 Classifiers

You will soon be learning more detail on this delicate matter. For the moment remember that a classifier is a particle that comes between the demonstrative pronoun or a number (or both) (this, that, these those; one, two, three; those fifteen...) and the noun concerned. Thus “a friend” is not (one + friend) but includes the right classifier for “friend” which is, in this case, the most common classifier: 个 ge. So a friend is 一个朋友 yí-ge péngyou. Three children is 三个孩子 sān-ge háizi. The difficult point here is that **certain** nouns only accept **certain** classifiers. For example, a book is 一本书 yì běn shū, 本 běn being the classifier for books. You will gradually acquire the most common classifiers, during the dialogues, always **in context**. For now, just remember that 个 ge is the most common.



14 You will probably have noticed a modification in the pronunciation of — yī, a, one. One as a number and as an ordinal number too (“first lesson”, “eleventh lesson”, etc.) takes a first tone. When it is followed by a first, second or third tone, one is pronounced yī. When the following syllable is a fourth tone (or pronounced with a neutral tone that was originally a fourth tone), one is pronounced yì (this is the case for a friend: 一个朋友 yí-ge péngyou)

6 The sentence-final particle 吧 ba expresses the imperative, or an invitation to do something: 吃吧! chī ba! eat some! 做吧! zuò ba! do it then! 你说吧! nǐ shuō ba! tell me! 你写吧! nǐ xiě ba! go on then! write it!

## 7 Nominalization

Apart from the (simple) case of kinship ties, or personal possessions, the particle 的 de will come between the nominalizer and the nominalized noun or phrase. So, a good book is 好的书 hǎo de shū; a nice house, 好的房子 hǎo de fángzi; very pretty children, 很漂亮的孩子 hěn piàoliang de háiizi. You will see that this is a general rule, whatever the form of nominalization (possessive, relative, circumstantial, locative, etc.). For example: your friend can be translated 你朋友 nǐ péngyou or 你的朋友 nǐ-de péngyou. Your father, 你父亲 nǐ fùqin or 你的父亲 nǐ-de fùqin. Your brother, 你哥哥 nǐ gēgē or 你的哥哥 nǐ-de gēgē, etc.

8 Try to translate the following sentences orally; then compare with the translation in paragraph 9. Don't worry if you don't always find the right translation! Meeting these idioms and phrases that are particular to Chinese, gradually you will be able to memorize them easily. This is why you are not asked to learn them by heart, but to **say them out loud** over and over again for the text of each lesson. When you get to lesson 49, the **active** phase of your study will begin: the Second Wave. Once you have studied your daily lesson,

14 you will go back and actively take up lesson one again. You will reread it and listen to it, then try to translate, orally and in writing, the English text into Chinese, correcting yourself as you go along. Each day, in this way, you will go back to a previous lesson, and consolidate what you have learned. At the end of the book, you will then cover this active phase of study!

- 1 What do you want to do?
- 2 Does your husband live here too?
- 3 What would you like to buy?
- 4 How many children has your older brother?
- 5 Are good books expensive?
- 6 My wife can speak English but she doesn't know how to write it.
- 7 Is Old Li also your friend?
- 8 I am not going to go and eat. What about you?

(These sentences are recorded in Chinese. Practice reciting them out loud!)

## 9 Translation

- 1 你想做什么?  
Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?
- 2 你爱人也住在这儿吗?  
Nǐ àiren yě zhù-zài zhèr ma?
- 3 你想买什么?  
Nǐ xiǎng mǎi shénme?
- 4 你哥哥有几个孩子?  
Nǐ gēgē yǒu jǐ-ge háiizi?
- 5 好的书贵吗?  
Hǎo-de shū guì ma?
- 6 我爱人会说英语, 可是她不会写。  
Wǒ àiren huì shuō yīngyǔ, kěshì tā bú huì xiě.

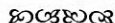
- 7 老李也是你的朋友吗？  
Lǎo Lǐ yě shì nǐ-de péngyou ma?  
8 我不去吃饭。你呢？  
Wǒ bú qù chī-fàn. Nǐ ne?

### 10 Note on the characters

If you have studied the characters carefully and paid attention to the transcription you will be able to recognize some of them by now. You will have noticed that the same element can be found in numerous characters. These are the *radicals*. So the left element of the characters 他 tā, *he*, 做 zuò, *to do*, 你 nǐ, *you* etc. is the *person radical*.

In the characters 好 *good*; 她 *she*, the left part is the *woman radical*. In 吃 *to eat* the radical is *mouth*: 口. In 想 *to wish* the radical in the lower part of the character is the *heart*: 心.

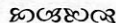
Using the list of radicals shown at the end of the book try to group the characters you meet; this will help you to remember them!



你有几个孩子？



*If you are in difficulty with the pronunciation of Chinese sounds, go back to the introduction to phonetics at the beginning of the book. From tomorrow onwards, the dialogues will only be read out once; one fairly slow reading that will gradually be accelerated to a normal speed of speaking. If you have the recording, don't hesitate to use it: listen to each lesson several times, and also listen to previous lessons over again. That's the best way to memorize the sounds and intonations of Chinese naturally.*



# 15 第十五课

## Dì shí-wǔ kè

- 1- 你明天做什么?  
Nǐ míngtiān zuò shénme? ①
- 2- 我明天回家。  
Wǒ míngtiān huí jiā.
- 3- 你家远不远?  
Nǐ jiā yuǎn-bù-yuǎn? ②
- 4- 不很远。  
Bù hěn yuǎn. ③
- 5- 你有车吗?  
Nǐ yǒu chē ma?
- 6- 我没有!  
Wǒ méi yǒu!
- 7- 你会不会开车?  
Nǐ huì-bú-huì kāi chē? ④

### Notes

- ① In Chinese the date always comes before the action, before the verb. Here, *míngtiān*, *tomorrow*, is all that is needed to express the future tense. As verbs are not conjugated, Chinese uses elements such as adverbs of time, or certain particles, to express the future or the past tenses.
- ② *jiā*, *house, home, family*. *huí jiā*, *to go back / home*. Be careful of the pronunciation and of the tones. *My house, your home*, etc. are constructed using *jiā* preceded by the personal pronoun. As for kinship ties, one can dispense with the nominalizing particle *de* for everyday possessions or use it, both being accepted: *wǒ-de jiā, nǐ-de jiā*, etc. *dàjiā* means *everyone*.

# Fifteenth Lesson 15

number ten-five lesson

- 1- What are you doing tomorrow?  
*you tomorrow do what?*
- 2- I'm going home tomorrow.  
*I tomorrow return home.*
- 3- Is your home far?  
*you home far neg. far?*
- 4- No, it isn't.  
*neg. very far.*
- 5- Do you have a car?  
*you have car interr.?*
- 6- No, I don't.  
*I neg. have!*
- 7- Do you know how to drive?  
*you know how neg. know how drive car?*

503808



- ③ *yuǎn*, *far, far away*. Pay attention to the pronunciation, between "an" and "en". Do not put any stress on the final "n"!
- ④ *huì*, *to know (after learning)*; *huì xiě*, *to know how to write*, *huì kāi-chē*, *to know how to drive (a car)*. Here the interrogative takes the alternative form: *huì-bú-huì?* Don't confuse *huí*, *to go back* and *huì*, *to know how to!* Pay attention to your tones and to your characters!

- 8- 我不会。  
Wǒ bú huì.
- 9- 你爱人会吗？  
Nǐ àiren huì ma?
- 10- 她也不会。  
Tā yě bú huì.
- 11- 那，你们明天怎么办？  
Nà, nǐmen míngtiān zěnmē bàn? ⑤
- 12- 我们骑自行车去！  
Wǒmen qí zìxíngchē qù! ⑥ □

## Notes

- ⑤ You have already met the expression *zěnmē bàn?* *what can we do?* constructed with the interrogative *how?* followed by *bàn*, *to do, to solve a problem, to find a way*. Not to be confused with *zuò*, *to do, to make*, which has a more concrete meaning (*zuò fàn*, *to do the cooking; nǐ zuò shénme? what are you doing, making?*).
- ⑥ *qí*, *to go by...*, is only used for travelling by bike, on horseback, by donkey, camel, etc.: *to ride a bike* is *qí zìxíngchē*. The verb *qù*, *to go*, is placed at the end of the sentence. The

\*\*\*

## Exercises

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 你们明天回不回家？  
Nǐmen míngtiān huí-bù-huì jiā?
- ② 你爱人也会开车吗？  
Nǐ àiren yě huì kāi chē ma?

- 8- No, I don't.  
*I neg. know how.*
- 9- Does your wife know [how to drive]?  
*you spouse know how interr?*
- 10- She doesn't know [how to drive] either.  
*she also neg. know how.*
- 11- So how will you manage tomorrow?  
*so, you tomorrow how do?*
- 12- We'll go by bicycle!  
*we ride bicycle go!*

- ▶ character *qí* is made up of two elements. The right element, indicating the pronunciation, and a left part, the radical. Here, the *horse* radical. It is often useful to be able to recognize the radical in a character as an aid to remembering its meaning. Learn to recognize the radical of the most common characters. Draw a circle round the radical or go over it with a coloured pen. You will then gradually be able to recognize the characters used in the dialogues.

\*\*\*

- ③ 你会不会骑自行车？  
Nǐ huì-bù-huì qí zìxíngchē?
- ④ 中国远不远？  
Zhōngguó yuǎn-bù-yuǎn?

## Exercise 1

- ① Are you going home tomorrow? ② Does your wife drive too?  
③ Can you ride a bicycle? ④ Is China far away?

16 完成句子  
Wánchéng jùzi

- ① Is your brother coming home tomorrow?  
Nǐ gēge ..... huí jiā ma?
- ② Can your friend drive a car?  
Nǐ-de péngyǒu huì-bú-huì ... ..?
- ③ I don't know how to ride a bike.  
Wǒ bú huì qí .....
- ④ What will you do?  
Nǐ ..... ?

16 第十六课  
Dì shí-liù kè

- 1- 你有票吗?  
Nǐ yǒu piào ma? ①
- 2- 没有!  
Méi yǒu! ②
- 3- 快去买吧!  
Kuài qù mǎi ba! ③

Notes

- ① Pay attention to the pronunciation of piào! Blow out sharply when you say the *p*!
- ② Here *no* is expressed by repeating the verb from the previous sentence but in the negative. (Méi yǒu is the negative form for the verb **to have**, yǒu).

Exercise 2

① - míngtiān - ② - kāi chē ③ - zìxíngchē ④ - zěnméi bàn

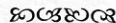
You will have noticed that the construction "not ... either" uses 也不 yě bù, also not: 我也不吃 wǒ yě bù chī, I don't eat (that) either. The negative of the verb to have is 没有 méi yǒu: 我也没有 wǒ yě méi yǒu, I haven't got (any) either.

Be careful when pronouncing 自 zī, 会 huì, 天 tiān.

From now on, as you will have noticed on the recordings, the speakers talk more quickly, at a speed more like that of a normal conversation, and the "phrase by phrase" reading is no longer used.

Sixteenth Lesson 16  
number ten-six lesson

- 1- Have you got a ticket?  
*you have ticket interr.?*
- 2- No, I haven't.  
*neg. have.*
- 3- Well, go and buy one quickly.  
*fast go buy suggestion.*



- ③ The sentence-final particle **ba** indicates an invitation to do something, which is often expressed by the **imperative** in English. In this case, *kuài*, *fast*, *quick*, placed before the verb, expresses *to hurry to...* It is an adverb here, and so always comes before the verb: *kuài chī ba!* eat quickly! *kuài qù!* hurry up and go!

16 4- 好! 你在这里等我, 好不好?

Hǎo! Nǐ zài zhèlǐ děng wǒ, hǎo-bù-hǎo! ④

5- 好! ... 火车几点开?

Hǎo! ... Huǒchē jǐ diǎn kāi? ⑤

6- 六点半

Liù diǎn bàn ⑥

7- 那, 还有时间!

Nà, hái yǒu shíjiān!

8- 对! 可是行李很多!

Duì! Kěshì xínglǐ hěn duō! ⑦

9- 那, 你快去买票吧!

Nà, nǐ kuài qù mǎi piào ba!

10- 好! 我去! 二十块钱够不够?

Hǎo! Wǒ qù! Èr shí kuài qián gòu-bù-gòu? ⑧

11- 我想够了!

Wǒ xiǎng gòu le! ⑨

### Notes

④ You have met *zài*, *to be (somewhere)*, *to be (at)*..., in the verbal sense, followed by a place. Here *zài* is a preposition: *at, in*, and introduces a place. This preposition clause is always before the verb, before the action: *zài zhèlǐ děng*, *to wait here* [at / here / wait]; *zài zhèlǐ chī-fàn*, *to eat here*, [to / here / eat]. *zhèlǐ* is synonymous with *zhèr*, *here*.

⑤ *jǐ-diǎn...?* *what time...?* The date, the time of an action, is placed, like all time clauses, **before the verb**.

⑥ The time is expressed using *diǎn*, *point for o'clock*. *Half past six* is: *liù (six) / diǎn (o'clock) / bàn (half)*.

4- Right! Will you wait for me here then?  
*good! you at here wait me, good neg. good?*

5- Right! ... What time does the train leave?  
*good! ... train how many o'clock leave?*

6- Half past six.  
*six o'clock half!*

7- So, we've still got time!  
*so, still have time!*

8- Yes, but I have a lot of luggage!  
*correct but luggage very many!*

9- So, quickly go and get your ticket then!  
*so! you fast go buy ticket suggestion!*

10- Right! I'm going. Will twenty yuan be enough?  
*good! I go! two-ten unit money, enough neg. enough?*

11- I think so!  
*I think enough le!*



⑦ *There are many, there is a lot of... is ...hěn duō*, word-for-word [... very numerous]; *tā-de péngyǒu hěn duō*, *he has lots of friends*, but you can also use the verb "to have": *tā yǒu hěn duō péngyǒu*.

⑧ Money is counted in *kuài*. for example: *èr shí kuài qián*, word-for-word [twenty / classifier / money]. *qián* means *money*: *wǒ yǒu qián*, *I've got money, I've got some cash*; *wǒ méi yǒu qián*, *I haven't got any money*. In this lesson you will have noticed that two characters are pronounced the same way *kuài* which means *quick!* and the classifier for currency *kuài*. Once again, during a conversation, these cannot be confused, as the two words are used differently, but if they are isolated they can only be distinguished by the written form of the character. So remember to learn the **characters**. Learn at least to recognize the most common ones. For *kuài*, *quick, fast*, the radical, on the left, is the *heart*. In *kuài*, "unit of currency", the radical, also on the left, is *earth*. The element on the right side of these two characters is the same. It indicates the pronunciation: *kuài*.

⑨ The sentence-final particle *le* is used to indicate a new situation, or that a certain level has been achieved.

16 Exercises

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 你快去吃饭吧!  
Nǐ kuài qù chī fàn ba!
- ② 他的朋友很多。  
Tā-de péngyǒu hěn duō.
- ③ 我有十六块钱。  
Wǒ yǒu shí liù kuài qián.
- ④ 三个菜、一个汤、够吗?  
Sān-ge cài, yī-ge tāng, gòu ma?

\*\*\*

完成句子

Wánchéng jùzi

- ① I haven't got a car yet.  
Wǒ ... méi yǒu chē.
- ② At half past six, OK?  
... .., hǎo-bù-hǎo?
- ③ I think he is still in China.  
Wǒ ... tā hái zài Zhōngguó.
- ④ I will eat here tomorrow.  
Míngtiān wǒ ... zhèlì chī fàn.

Exercise 1

- ① Go quickly and have your meal!
- ② He has lots of friends.
- ③ I've got sixteen yuan.
- ④ Three dishes and a soup, will that be enough?

我想够了!



\*\*\*

Exercise 2

- ① - hái -
- ② liù diǎn bàn -
- ③ - xiǎng -
- ④ - zài -

Beware! The English pronunciation cannot always be a perfect rendering of the Chinese sound. For example the "g" in 够 gòu is pronounced somewhere between the "g" in "good" and the "c" in "cat". If you have the recordings, pay careful attention to the real sounds of the Chinese pronunciation. In the same way, the "ou" in 够 gòu is an "o" where the mouth closes slightly at the end of the sound, as in the word "low".

You will have noticed that one of the problems in learning Chinese is that there are many syllables that sound the same, and that only the written words (or the context) make them distinguishable. So this means that if you are only studying the pinyin transcription, the

17 context is the only means of distinguishing between 办 bàn, to do and 半 bàn, half; 快 kuài, rapid and 块 kuài, unit of currency. If however you pay attention to the Chinese characters, all these words are easily identified. Some syllables, although they sound the same, are immediately identifiable by their position in a sentence so that 票 piào, ticket and 漂亮 piàoliang, pretty; or 还 hái,

## 17 第十七课 Dì shí-qī kè

- 1- 走吧!  
Zǒu ba! ①
- 2- 等一下! 好象下雨了!  
Děng yí-xià! Hǎoxiàng xià-yǔ le! ②
- 3- 哦! ... 对! ... 下雨了!  
ò! ... Duì! ... Xià-yǔ le!

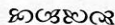
### Notes

- ① The sentence-final particle ba indicates an order, advice, a suggestion, an invitation. In general the verb is translated using the imperative (lesson 12, note 6). chī ba! eat up! qù ba! go on! zǒu ba! let's go! mǎi ba! buy some! shuō ba! speak out! nǐ xiě ba! go on, write it! etc.
- ② Wait a minute! hang on a bit! the expression yí-xià after a verb, means, a moment. hǎoxiàng means it seems (to be, that), and is placed just before the verb. hǎoxiàng hěn lěng, it seems to be very cold; hǎoxiàng hěn hǎo, it seems to be good; hǎoxiàng yǒu rén, it seems that there are people; hǎoxiàng méi yǒu, it seems that there isn't any; etc. xià-yǔ, to fall rain, to rain. Here the character for xià, to fall, to go down, to descend is the

still and 孩子 háizi, child, cannot be confused. Generally speaking, try to understand the lessons in a "global" way, without trying to analyze the detail of each word or each syllable. By meeting expressions in different contexts you will memorize them progressively and easily.

## Seventeenth Lesson 17 number ten-seven lesson

- 1- Let's go!  
go suggestion!
- 2- Wait a minute! I think it's raining!  
wait a moment! seem fall rain le!
- 3- Oh! ... Yes! ... It's started to rain!  
oh! ... yes! ... rain le!



- ▶ same as in yí-xià, a moment, but their grammatical function is different. In to rain, xià is a verb. The modal sentence-final particle le indicates a "new state", a different situation. Here: "it wasn't raining a minute ago, but now it's raining"; "it's starting to rain". wǒ yǒu le! and now I've got some! tā lǎo le! he's getting old now! Be careful: when the sentence is in the negative, the sentence-final particle le (indicating a new state) has the meaning "not...any more...". wǒ bú yào le! I don't want any more! wǒ bú chī le! I'm not eating any more! wǒ méi yǒu le! I haven't got any more! méi yǒu le! there isn't any more! zhèr méi yǒu rén le, there isn't anybody here any more, etc.



- 4- 怎么办呢?  
Zěnmē bàn ne? ③
- 5- 下雨, 去公园儿没有意思!  
Xià-yǔ, qù gōngyuánr méi yǒu yìsi! ④
- 6- 那、明天去吧!  
Nà, míngtiān qù ba!
- 7- 明天我有事儿!  
Míngtiān wǒ yǒu shìr! ⑤
- 8- 那、不去吧!  
Nà, bú qù ba! ⑥

## Notes

- ③ The sentence-final particle *ne* means *well... then! so... then...!* You have already met it in the sense of “and you then? and me then? and him then? etc.” as an interrogative particle replacing the repetition of the verb from the previous sentence. Here, *ne* can be used in sentences that are not necessarily interrogative. *ne* **reinforces** the affirmative or the interrogative: *lěng ne!* *so it is cold then!* *shéi qù ne?* *so who is going then?*
- ④ As usual, the construction used here is as concise as possible. The conjunction is not stated but understood, but the sense remains clear. The two clauses are next to each other, but there is no “if” to indicate the conditional in the Chinese construction: *xià-yǔ, wǒ bú qù!* *if it's raining, then I won't go!* *nǐ qù, wǒ bú qù!* *if you're going, then I won't go!* Be careful! *public park* is pronounced *gōngyuán*, or, in the Beijing area: *gōngyuánr*. This is a retroflex “r”, like the final American “r” in “flower”, which is used by Beijingers at the end of lots of words. To represent this pronunciation in the pinyin transcription, a final *r* is added without modifying the original transcription. You have already seen “a little”, (see lesson 13), which is transcribed in pinyin as *yìdiǎnr*, because in other contexts these two charac-

- 4- What shall we do then?  
*how do ne?*
- 5- There's no point going to the park when it's raining!  
*rain, go park neg. have sense!*
- 6- So we'll go tomorrow!  
*so tomorrow go suggestion!*
- 7- I have things to do tomorrow.  
*tomorrow I have things!*
- 8- So, we'll not go then!  
*so neg. go suggestion!*



- ters are pronounced *yìdiǎnr*; *er* is transcribed as a character to show when the Beijing pronunciation is used in the recording. It is the written representation of this “retroflex” ending “er” in certain words (see note 5). *méi yǒu yìsi* (be careful of the pronunciation! “may yo ee’sé”), *not fun, not interesting, boring*, etc.
- ⑤ *yǒu shìr* (be careful of the pronunciation!) *to be busy, to have things to do, to have work to do...* Word-for-word [to have/ things]. To pronounce the final “r”, your tongue should be curved towards the top of the palate, but without touching it.
- ⑥ Once again, note that you can dispense with personal pronouns when the sense is clear, particularly in an everyday conversation.

17 9- 可是待在家里也没有意思!

Kěshì dāi zài jiāli yě méi yǒu yìsī! ⑦

10- 那、还是去吧!

Nà, hái shì qù ba! ⑧

11- 好! 走!

Hǎo! Zǒu! □

### Notes

- ⑦ dāi-zài: the verb *to stay* (dāi) is followed by the preposition zài, *at / in*, introducing the place. You have already met (lesson 9) zhù-zài, *to reside / at, to live / in*. jiāli, *at home*. You have already met jiā with the same meaning. lǐ is a postposition meaning *inside / within*, and always comes **after** the place. For example you will meet: zài shū lǐ, *in the book*; zài gōngyuán ▶

\*\*\*

### Exercises

练习

Liànxí

① 你好象很累。

Nǐ hǎoxiàng hěn lèi.

② 今天冷了。

Jīntiān lěng le.

③ 这个人没有意思。

Zhèi-ge rén méi yǒu yìsī.

9- But staying indoors isn't interesting either.

*but stay at home also neg. have sense!*

10- Well, let's go all the same then!

*so still be go suggestion!*

11- Right! Let's go!

*good! go!*

ᠪᠠᠶᠢᠨᠠᠨᠢᠨ

- ▶ lǐ, *in the park*. yě méi yǒu yìsī, *not interesting either (not interesting also)*. yě, *also*, in a negative sentence is translated by *...either...*

- ⑧ The adverb háishi has the sense of *however, it would be better to...* (taking a decision contradicting the advice given previously by someone else). nà háishi nǐ qù ba! *perhaps it would be better if you went!* háishi wǒ qù ba! *maybe I'd better go myself!*

\*\*\*

④ 你明天有没有事儿?

Nǐ míngtiān yǒu-méi-yǒu shìr?

⑤ 下雨怎么办呢?

Xià-yù zěnmē bàn ne?

### Exercise 1

- ① You seem very tired. ② It's cold today. ③ That person is uninteresting. ④ Have you got things to do tomorrow? ⑤ What shall we do if it rains?

18 完成句子  
Wánchéng jùzi

- ① It seems to be cold now!  
..... lěng le!
- ② Are you busy today?  
Nǐ jīntiān yǒu .... ma?
- ③ I don't want any more.  
Wǒ bú yào ...
- ④ I am staying at home today.  
Jīntiān wǒ ... zài jiāli.

18 第十八课  
Dì shí-bā kè

- 1 - 马老师在不在?  
Mǎ Lǎoshī zài-bú-zài? ①
- 2 - 他不在!  
Tā bú zài! ②
- 3 - 你是他的姐姐吗?  
Nǐ shì tā-de jiějie ma? ③

Notes

- ① A person's title or occupation always comes **after** their name. Zài, *to be in a certain place*, is a verb. The interrogative can be zài ma? or zài-bú-zài?
- ② Note that the negative bù is pronounced with a **second tone** (bú) when the following syllable is a fourth tone.

Exercise 2

① hǎoxiàng - ② - shìr - ③ - le ④ - dāi - .

*You are getting to know the particles, especially 了 le and 呢 ne, which you have met several times. From the context, and by using them often, you will become familiar with the real meaning of these elements that are so important in the Chinese sentence. If you feel a bit lost, review the previous few lessons, and refer, as indicated in lesson 8.*

**Eighteenth Lesson** 18  
number ten-eight lesson

- 1 - Is Mr Ma here?  
*Ma teacher here neg. here?*
- 2 - No, he isn't.  
*he neg. here!*
- 3 - Are you his older sister?  
*you be his older sister interr.?*



- ③ The verb shì, *to be*, is pronounced with a neutral tone (shì) when its role is to join two equivalent nominal clauses. It is pronounced shì in answer to a question (*yes! yes indeed! ..*) or to insist on an element in the sentence. Note *his*, constructed with the personal pronoun tā, followed by the nominalizing particle de.

- 4- 不! 我是他秘书!  
Bù! Wǒ shì tā mìshu!
- 5- 他什么时候回来?  
Tā shénme shíhou huí lai? ④
- 6- 我不清楚!  
Wǒ bù qīngchu! ⑤
- 7- 你告诉他我去看病!  
Nǐ gàosu tā wǒ qù kàn bìng! ⑥
- 8- 哦! 您病了!  
ó! Nín bìng le! ⑦
- 9- 这几天我不舒服!  
Zhè-jǐ tiān wǒ bù shūfu. ⑧

## Notes

- ④ shénme shíhou...? is *when? at what time...?* [what / time?] and comes **before** the action, **before** verbal clause. huílai, *come back*. You have already met huí jiā, [go back / home]. Here the verb means *to come back*, compare it to huíqù, *to go back*.
- ⑤ wǒ bù qīngchu is *it's not clear, I don't really know*, [I / not / clear (on this question)]. You have also seen (lesson 11): wǒ bù zhīdào, *I don't know*.
- ⑥ gàosu, *to tell (someone about something)*, is followed directly by the person to be told, then by the information to be given: nǐ gàosu tā wǒ bú qù, *tell him that I'm not going* [you / to inform / him / I / negative / to go]. It is not necessary or possible, to translate "that"! kàn bìng, *to go to the doctor's*, [to see / illness].
- ⑦ nín is the polite form of address, second person singular. It is written like nǐ with the *heart* radical underneath. bìng le, *to become ill*.

- 4- No, I'm his secretary.  
*neg. I be he secretary!*
- 5- When will he be back?  
*he what time return?*
- 6- I'm not sure!  
*I neg. clear!*
- 7- Tell him I'm going to see the doctor!  
*you tell he I go see illness!*
- 8- Oh! You're ill!  
*oh! you ill le!*
- 9- I haven't felt well these last few days.  
*this several day I neg. comfortable.*

这几天我不舒服!



- ⑧ shūfu, *to feel well, to be comfortable*. bù shūfu, *not well, off colour, not too good*. zhè-jǐ tiān, *these few days*. You have already met jǐ as an interrogative (lesson 11: jǐ-ge, *how many?* lesson 16: jǐdiān, *what time?*). It is not an interrogative here. The sense is *a few, some*. The position is like a classifier: between the demonstrative pronoun and the noun it applies to. You will also find: zhè sān tiān, *these three days*, or zhè liù tiān, *the past six days*. It is pronounced zhè or zhèi, when followed by a classifier.

- 18 10 - 好! 您贵姓?  
Hǎo! Nín guì xìng? ⑨
- 11 - 我姓李, 叫国宝。  
Wǒ xìng Lǐ, jiào Guóbǎo. ⑩
- 12 - 好! 我一定告诉他!  
Hǎo! Wǒ yí dìng gào su tā! ⑪ □

### Notes

- ⑨ The polite way to ask someone their family name is *guì xìng?* or *nín guì xìng?* *what is your (venerable) family name?* *xìng* means the *family name*, usually monosyllabic but occasionally bisyllabic.
- ⑩ In China, the last name comes before the given name. The family name (*xìng*) can have one or sometimes two characters (one or two syllables). There are 365 family names (of which 44 are made up of two characters). Given names, made up of one ▶

\*\*\*

### Exercises

练习

Liànxí

- ① 李 老 师 去 看 病。  
Lǐ Lǎoshī qù kàn bìng.
- ② 你 爱 人 什 么 时 候 回 来?  
Nǐ àiren shénme shíhou huí lái?
- ③ 你 贵 姓?  
Nǐ guì xìng?

- 10 - Of course. What is your (venerable family) name?  
*good! you worthy name?*
- 11 - My surname is Li, forename Guobao.  
*I name Li, called Guobao.*
- 12 - Right! I'll be sure to tell him!  
*good! I certainly inform he!*

☞☞☞☞☞

- ▶ or two characters, are **chosen** and composed by the parents. *xìng, family name*, is also the verb *to be named*. *jiào, to be called*, is used for presenting your given name. You will meet *jiào* in many other situations - to ask the word for an object, for example: *zhèi-ge jiào shénme? what is this called?*
- ⑪ The adverb always comes before the verb, as here *yí dìng, certainly, without doubt, surely*. Note that the context means you can understand that the future is concerned. There is nothing to express the tense, apart from the adverb.

\*\*\*

- ④ 这 个 , 我 不 清 楚 。  
Zhèi-ge, wǒ bù qīngchū.

### Exercise 1

- ① Mr Li, the teacher, is going to see the doctor. ② When is your wife (your husband) coming home? ③ What is your name please? ④ I'm not sure about that (I don't know about that).

19 完成句子  
Wánchéng jùzi

- ① He hasn't been here for the past few days.  
... .. tiān, tā bú zài.
- ② He isn't feeling well.  
Tā bù hěn .....
- ③ When is your elder sister coming home?  
Nǐ jiějie ..... huí lai?
- ④ I don't really know.  
Wǒ bù ..... or: Wǒ bù .....

19 第十九课  
Dì shí-jiǔ kè

- 1 - 他来了吗?  
Tā lái-le ma? ①
- 2 - 他没有来!  
Tā méi yǒu lái! ②

Notes

- ① The verbal suffix *le* expresses a completed action. This most often concerns an action in the past, but it can also apply to an action which **will be** completed, or a **succession of two actions**. For the moment remember: *xià-le yǔ*, *it rained*; *tā mǎi-le chē*, *he bought a car*; *tā chī-le fàn*, *he has eaten*. When the verb takes an object, the completed action suffix is placed between the verb and the object. If the verb has no object, out of context it may not be possible to tell whether *le* is the completed action suffix or the verb final particle indicating a change of

Exercise 2

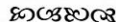
- ① zhè-jǐ - ② - shūfu ③ - shénme shíhou - ④ - zhīdào - qīngchu.

*In Chinese there is a polite form of address in the second person singular 您 nín, but it is only used in very formal situations. For everyday life you use 你 nǐ, even where other languages, such as French for example, use a polite form. In the same way, the terms 爸爸 bàba, dad, daddy and 妈妈 māma, mum, mummy are not reserved for use by children, but are often also used by adults.*

Nineteenth Lesson 19

number ten-nine lesson

- 1 - Has he arrived?  
*he come le interr.?*
- 2 - No, he hasn't!  
*he neg. have come!*



- ▶ state. So *tā lái le!* may be translated as *he's arrived!* or *here he comes!* The context provides the distinction. In transcription the completed action suffix is connected to the verb with a hyphen whereas the sentence-final particle, indicating a currently relevant state, stands alone.
- ② The negative for the completed action is *méi yǒu*, followed by the **verb**: *wǒ méi yǒu qù*, *I didn't go*; *tā méi yǒu lái*, *he hasn't come*; *wǒ méi yǒu mǎi chē*, *I haven't bought a car*, etc.

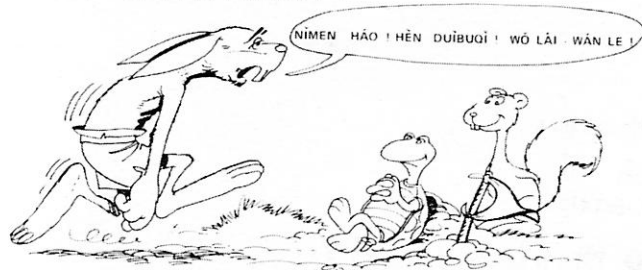
- 3- 我们怎么办呢?  
Wǒmen zěnmē bàn ne?
- 4- 不等他了!  
Bù děng tā le! ③
- 5- 我怕他不认识路!  
Wǒ pà tā bú rènshi lù!
- 6- 认识! 认识! 他来过三次了!  
Rènshi! Rènshi! Tā lái-guo sān cì le! ④
- 7- 那, ... 可能出了事儿!  
Nà, ... kěnéng chū-le shìr!
- 8- 我最好去打听一下!  
Wǒ zuì hǎo qù dǎtīng yí-xià!
- 9- 好! 你去打听吧!  
Hǎo! Nǐ qù dǎtīng ba!

## Notes

- ③ Here you will recognize a new state expressed by the sentence-final particle *le*: *let's not wait for him any longer!* from now on, *let's not wait for him any more!* You will also notice that the imperative is implied simply by intonation.
- ④ “Yes he does!”, is indicated by the verb, which was negative in the previous sentence and which is repeated here in the affirmative. *lái-guo*: the verb *to come*, followed by the verbal suffix *-guo* indicating the experience aspect. Here *sān-cì*, *three times*. ▶

- 3- What shall we do then?  
*we how do ne?*
- 4- We can't wait for him any longer!  
*neg. wait he le!*
- 5- I'm afraid he doesn't know the way!  
*I fear he neg. know road!*
- 6- Yes, he does! He's already been here three times!  
*know! know! he come experiential three time le!*
- 7- Well... perhaps something has happened!  
*well... possible exit le things!*
- 8- I'd better go and enquire.  
*I best go enquire a little!*
- 9- Yes! You go and enquire then!  
*good! you go enquire suggestion!*

你们好！很对不起！我来晚了！



- ▶ The sentence-final particle *le* shows the “state of the question”: he has *already* been three times. The adverb “already” is often used to translate the Chinese construction into English [...verb + *guo...le*], with the past perfect.

19 10 - 哦！来了！来了！

ò! Láí le! Láí le! ⑤

11 - 你们好！很对不起！我来晚了！

Nǐmen hǎo! Hěn duì-bu-qǐ! Wǒ lái wǎn le! ⑥

12 - 好了！好了！吃饭吧！

Hǎo le! Hǎo le! Chī-fàn ba! ⑦ □

### Notes

- ⑤ Here is a case where a difficulty appears with the suffix *le*. It is used to express *he has arrived*, or *here he comes*, according to the situation, because it's either completed action or change of state. ▶

\*\*\*

### Exercises

练习

Liànxí

① 他们来了吗？

Tāmen lái-le ma?

② 我今天没有去。

Wǒ jīntiān méi yǒu qù.

③ 他可能不认识路！

Tā kěnéng bú rènshi lù!

10 - Oh! Here he is!

oh! come le! come le!

11 - Hello (everyone)! I'm very sorry! I'm late!

you good! very sorry! I come late le!

12 - Fine! Well then, let's start eating!

good le! good le! eat suggestion!

ㄟㄛㄟㄛㄟ

- ▶ ⑥ *wǎn (le)*, *to be late*, comes just after the verb it modifies. You will meet several of these verbs. Remember this one for now: *lái-wǎn*, *to arrive late*.
- ⑦ *hǎo le!* *right, that's fine now! that's it! that's enough!* *chī-fàn ba!* *dinner's ready! let's start! let's go and eat!* The sentence-final particle *ba* indicates an invitation; it is expressed, in this case, by the imperative in English.

\*\*\*

④ 大家累了。

Dàjiā lèi le.

### Exercise 1

- ① Have they arrived? ② I didn't go today. ③ Maybe he doesn't know the way! ④ Everyone is tired now.



20 完成句子  
Wánchéng jùzi

- ① Go and enquire!  
Nǐmen qù . . . . . ba!
- ② I fear he does not know me.  
Wǒ . . tā bú rènshi wǒ.
- ③ The best is for you to come tomorrow.  
Nǐ . . . . . míngtiān lái.
- ④ Maybe he has already arrived.  
Tā . . . . . lái-guò.

20 第二十课  
Dì èr-shí kè

- 1 - 老王的姐姐有孩子吗?  
Lǎo Wáng de jiějie yǒu hái zi ma? ①
- 2 - 有! 有两个孩子!  
Yǒu! Yǒu liǎng-ge hái zi! ②

Notes

- ① **Possession** is indicated by adding *de*. The nominalizing element (the possessor) always comes before the nominalized object (the thing or person possessed). Lǎo Wáng de jiějie, (*Old Wang's sister*). Lǎo Wáng de shū, (*Wang's book*). Lǎo Wáng de tàitai, (*Wang's wife*). wǒ-de tàitai, (*my wife*). You will see that this construction is valid for all nominalization, whether it is to express possession or a relative clause, etc.
- ② *Yes!* is expressed by repeating the verb used in the question, in the affirmative. Be careful! There are two words for

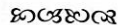
Exercise 2

① - dǎting - ② - pà - ③ - zuì hǎo - ④ - kěnéng -

*A word of advice: if you wish to read and write Chinese, remember to study the characters.*

Twentieth Lesson 20  
number two-ten lesson

- 1 - Has Wang's older sister got children?  
*old Wang possessive sister have child interr.?*
- 2 - Yes! She has two children!  
*have! have two classifier child!*



- ▶ *two*. Wherever "two" is followed by a classifier introducing a noun, you need to use *liǎng*. When "two" comes into a number greater than 10 (12, 22, 25, 52, ...), then you must use *èr*. You must also use *èr* for ordinal numbers (*dì èr kè, second lesson*). Remember: *two children* is *liǎng-ge hái zi*. Always remember the **classifier** which is placed just before the noun it introduces. Pronunciation second tones: *hái zi*. When two third tone syllables follow one another, the first is pronounced with the second tone! Here, *yǒu liǎng-ge* is in fact pronounced: *yóu liǎng-ge*.

- 3- 男的还是女的?  
Nán-de hái-shi nǚ-de? ③④
- 4- 一个男的, 一个女的。  
Yí-ge nán-de, yí-ge nǚ-de. ⑤
- 5- 他们现在几岁了?  
Tāmen xiànzài jǐ suì le? ⑥
- 6- 男孩子十岁了。  
Nán hái-zi shí suì le.

## Notes

- ③ nán-de, a boy (the word “children” is understood (háizi) here: nán(de) háizi, a boy child). You will have seen that the particle de is used to nominalize, and is always placed in front of the noun that is qualified. It can be resumed as follows: the adjective always comes **in front of** the noun that it describes, and the nominalizing particle de comes between the two elements connected by it. The noun, as here, can be understood.
- ④ Here hái-shi is the interrogative ... or...? and is placed between the two parallel clauses forming the question. qù hái-shi bú qù? to go or not to go? nǐ qù hái-shi wǒ qù? are you going or am I? Reminder: on nǚ the umlaut is to distinguish nǚ (“nu”, the “u” as in the French “rue”), from nu (“noo”, the “oo” as in “noodle”), and to distinguish lǚ (the “lu” as in French) from lu (as in “loop”). In other cases, the umlaut is **not necessary** because the “oo” sound cannot exist with the consonants “j”, “q” and “x”: ju, qu, xu are always pronounced with the ü sound (as in the French “rue”).
- ⑤ Here one is pronounced yí-ge because ge, was originally pronounced with the fourth tone, and when yī is in front of a fourth tone, it is pronounced as a second tone tone: yí. Remember that a number must always be followed by a **classifier**, which is not translated; a noun, when it is quantified or counted, must be preceded by the relevant classifier. For the moment remember that ge is the most common classifier.

- 3- Boys or girls?  
*male de or female de?*
- 4- A boy and a girl.  
*one class. male de, one class. female de.*
- 5- How old are they now?  
*they now how many year le?*
- 6- The boy is ten.  
*man child ten year le.*

🌀🌀🌀🌀



- ⑥ Time is always expressed **before the verb**. Here the “verbal” element is jǐ-suì? *how old?* xiànzài, *now*, is placed **before**. The sentence-final particle le means that the question applies to the **present situation**: “at today’s date, how old are they?”. It concerns the present state of events, not yesterday’s, or how things were two months ago. jǐ-suì le? can be used to ask the question regarding children **up to the age of ten**. For older people, use the structure duō-dà le?

7- 女孩子呢?

Nǚ háizi ne? ⑦

8- 这, 我不清楚!

Zhè, wǒ bù qīngchū!

9- 老王没有告诉你吗?

Lǎo Wáng méi yǒu gàosu nǐ ma?

10- 我忘了! 真的, 我忘了!

Wǒ wàng le! Zhēnde, wǒ wàng le!

11- 算了! 算了! 一会儿我去问他!

Suàn le! Suàn le! Yíhuìr wǒ qù wèn tā! ⑧⑨

12- 好! 你去问他吧!

Hǎo! Nǐ qù wèn tā ba! □

### Notes

- ⑦ When the interrogative sentence-final particle **ne** is used, you do not need to repeat the verb in the question (Lesson 13, note 6). *tā ne?* and *what about him?* *nǐ ne?* and *what about you?* *wǒ ne?* and *what about me?*

\*\*\*

### Exercises

练习

Liànxí

① 姐姐的孩子会说英语吗?

Jiějie de háizi huì shuō yīngyǔ ma?

② 你开车还是我开车?

Nǐ kāi chē háishi wǒ kāi chē?

99 • jiǔ-shí-jiǔ

7- And the girl?

*female child ne?*

8- I'm not sure about that!

*that, I neg. clear!*

9- Hasn't Wang told you?

*old Wang neg. have tell you interr.?*

10- I've forgotten! Really, I've forgotten!

*I forget le! really de, I forget le!*

11- OK Never mind! I'll ask him later!

*too bad! too bad! in a while I go ask he!*

12- Right! You ask him then!

*good! you go ask he suggestion!*

ㄟㄨㄛㄨㄛ

- ▶ ⑧ A very useful expression: "Forget it!", "Too bad!", "It doesn't matter!", "Let's drop it!"

- ⑨ *yíhuìr*, in a minute; is *yíhuì*, pronounced "like a Beijinger", that is by ending the vowel with an "r", tongue curved up to the back of the mouth. The pronunciation is in fact *yíhuìr* (ee hooer). This expression means that an action is going to take place in a moment, and so the verb will be translated in the future tense. This is another example of the use of adverbs to express the **tense** of a verb, the **time** when the action takes place (past, present or future). *yíhuìr wǒ qù kàn tā*, *I'll go and see him in a minute.*

\*\*\*

③ 一会儿我们去吃饭。

Yí huìr wǒmen qù chī-fàn.

④ 你现在做什么?

Nǐ xiànzài zuò shénme?

### Exercise 1

- ① Can **his** (her) older sister's children speak English? ② Are you driving or am I? ③ We'll go and have lunch in a little while. ④ What are you doing now?

## 完成句子 Wánchéng jùzi

- ① I'm not going. And you?  
Wǒ bú qù. Nǐ . . . ?
- ② Is that a boy or a girl?  
Tā shì nán-de . . . . . nǚ-de?
- ③ How old is Wang's older sister?  
Lǎo Wáng . . jiějie . . . . . le?
- ④ Do you have a car now?  
Nǐ . . . . . yǒu chē ma?

Remember to read the numbers of the lessons. Up to 99, the only numbers you need to know are from 1 to 10. You have seen that from 11 to 19 all you need is "ten" followed by the relevant unit (eleven = "ten-one"; fifteen = "ten-five"; nineteen = "ten-nine"). From

## 21 第二十一课 Dì èr-shí-yī kè

### REVISION AND NOTES

#### Read the notes again

- 15th lesson ①, ②, ④ - 16th: ②, ③, ④, ⑨ - 17th: ③, ④, ⑥  
- 18th: ②, ④, ⑦, ⑨ - 19th: ①, ②, ③, ④ - 20th: ①, ②, ③.

#### 1 Pronunciation

Learn to distinguish the consonants j, q and x. Read the following syllables out loud:

101 • yī-bǎi-líng-yī

## Exercise 2

① - ne ② - háishi - ③ - de - jǐ-suì - ④ - xiànzài -.

twenty onwards, the number for the tens is followed by the number of units: "twenty" is "two-ten" (i.e. [two (times) ten]); "twenty-one" is "two-ten-one" (i.e. [two (times) ten (plus) one]), and "twenty-nine" is "two-ten-nine". Then... "thirty-nine" is "three-ten-nine", and so on!

This lesson may seem hard, but in fact, at the end of this third week, you have already met the three main particles in Chinese: the verbal suffix 了 le indicating a completed action, the sentence-final particle 了 le indicating a change, and the nominalizer 的 de that comes between the adjectival element and the noun. Don't hesitate to review the previous lessons, and keep paying attention to the phonetics; repeat out loud being careful to pronounce the tones correctly on each syllable.

## Twenty-first Lesson 21 number two-ten-one lesson

- jia, jiao, jie, jiu, jian (be careful! pronounced "tjee'en").
- qia, qiao, qie, qiu (be careful! pronounced "ts'heeo"), qian.
- xia, xiao, xie, xiu, xian, xin, xing, xiang.

Remember that after z, c, s, zh, ch, sh, r the letter i is not pronounced "ee" but corresponds to a "silent e", to a "non vowel".

Read the following syllables, paying attention to the tones:

zì cì sì zhī chī shī

zhè zhèi zhēn zhōng

chē chū chī cì cài cǎi chái

sī sì chī chí chǐ chì

Be careful of iu. It is in fact pronounced "eeo" as in 六 liú, six.

yī-bǎi-líng-èr • 102

**21** **2** Counting in Chinese consists in saying the figures that make up the number, as if you were calculating: *twenty-one* is two (times) ten (plus) one (makes): 二十一 èr shí yī that is two / ten / one. This system works up until one hundred. For *one hundred and one* you must say [one/ hundred / zero /one], and for *one hundred and seventy-five*, you must say: [one / hundred / seven / ten / five] and in the same way for all numbers. Try to memorize the numbers from one to ten, and pay attention to the numbering of the lessons; in this way, in a few weeks, you will learn naturally how to count in Chinese.

### 3 Place

In the first lessons you met the **verb** 在 zài, *to be at / in...* followed directly by the **place**. Then you saw that 女 zài could also sometimes be used as a **preposition**, before the locative clause, and that the place always comes **before the action**. In this way: 你在这儿等我 nǐ zài zhèr děng wǒ, *wait for me here* [you / at / here / wait / me]. In the same way, according to the construction [subject / zai / place / action], you can say: 他在中国工作 tā zài Zhōngguó gōngzuò, *he works in China* [he / in / China / to work]. However you have met one verb which does not respect this construction: 住在 zhù-zài, *to live*. 你住在这儿 nǐ zhù-zài zhèr, *you live here*.

**4** You have met several **interrogatives**, for example 谁 shéi 什么 shénme 吗 ma 什么时候 shénme shíhou 还是 háishi 怎么 zěnmē. These are the most common ones. You will gradually learn to use them, by repeating the lessons several times over, or by listening to the recordings if you have them. Remember that the reply to a question comes in the same position as the interrogative particle, and that in general interrogatives respect the following construction: 什么时候 shénme shíhou, *when*, a question of time, comes before the action; 谁 shéi respects the construction

[subject+verb+complement] and is placed, either before, if the question is about the subject, or after the verb, if the question concerns the complement: 谁去买菜? shéi qù mǎi cài? *who is going shopping?* 你等谁? nǐ děng shéi? *who are you waiting for?*

**5** Get into the habit of always placing the **classifier** after a number to introduce a noun: 两个孩子 liǎng-ge hái zi, *two children*; 三个朋友 sān-ge péng you, *three friends*; 五个姐姐 wǔ-ge jiějie, *five older sisters*; 七个老师 qī-ge lǎo shī, *seven teachers*; 两个颜色 liǎng-ge yánsè, *two colours*. In the following lessons you will meet nouns that do not accept 个 ge but take another classifier. Like 两本书 liǎng-běn shū, *two books*; 一辆车 yí-liàng chē, *one car*. For now repeat the lessons including the basic vocabulary; you will gradually acquire more and more... but not too much all at once!

**6 Adverbs** always come before the verb; 也 yě, 也不 yě bù, 太 tài, 不太 bú tài, 很 hěn, 一定 yíding etc. Be careful to respect this rule *I'm going too* is 我也去 wǒ yě qù; *I'll tell him without fail* is 我一定告诉他 wǒ yíding gàosu tā. You will surely notice that many words in English are just not there in Chinese. Chinese likes to be concise, and all the elements of a sentence are intelligible through context or by being understood.

**7 The modal sentence-final particle** 了 le often appears. It is sometimes used for stylistic reasons, in order to reinforce a sentence; in the first analysis you saw that it indicates a change in state, 不下雨了 bú xià-yǔ le, *it's not raining any more!* 我不想去看病了 wǒ bù xiǎng qù kàn bìng le, *I don't want to go to the doctor's any more!* 我现在有工作了 wǒ xiànzài yǒu gōngzuò le, *I'm in work now (I've found a job!)*. This particle is always at the end of the sentence. It should not to be confused with the verbal suffix 了 le (pronounced the same) and which indicates a completed action: 我买了车 wǒ mǎi-le chē, *I bought a car*; 他吃了两个菜! tā chī-le liǎng-ge cài! *he's eaten two dishes!*

**8 Nominalization** puts two elements in relation to each other, one being dependant on the other; in Chinese the nominalizer always precedes the nominalized element; so *an inexpensive restaurant* is [not / expensive / restaurant]; *a cheeky child*: [cheeky / child]; *the lawyer's hat*: [lawyer / hat] etc. However, the particle 的 *de* almost always comes between the two elements; 老师的书 *lǎoshī de shū*, *the teacher's book*; 我的书 *wǒ-de shū*, *my book*. You will see that this construction is not only used to indicate possession but also a relative clause; *the man who is reading* is [to read / *de* / man]. But you'll come to that in a few days!

### 9 Write in Chinese (Second Wave)

- 1 (Old) Wang's older sister hasn't got a car yet.
- 2 Does your older brother know how to speak Chinese?
- 3 What is your wife doing now?
- 4 Do you want to go by bike?
- 5 I can't speak Chinese yet.
- 6 Is your house far?
- 7 Is your child a boy or a girl?

### 10 Translation

- 1 老王的姐姐还没有车。  
Lǎo Wáng de jiějie hái méi yǒu chē.
- 2 你的哥哥会不会说中文?  
Nǐ-de gēge huì-bú-huì shuō zhōngwén?
- 3 你的爱人现在做什么?  
Nǐ-de àiren xiànzài zuò shénme?
- 4 你要不要骑自行车?  
Nǐ yào-bú-yào qí zìxíngchē?
- 5 我还不会说中文。  
Wǒ hái bú huì shuō zhōngwén.

- 6 你家里远不远?  
Nǐ jiāli yuǎn-bù-yuǎn?
- 7 你的孩子是男的还是女的?  
Nǐ de háizi shì nán-de hái shì nǚ-de?

**11** Memorize the following expressions, seen over the last three weeks.

六点半

liù diǎn bàn, (at) half past six

两次

liǎng cì, twice

三次

sān cì, three times

两个孩子

liǎng-ge háizi, two children

几个?

jǐ-ge? how many?

几点?

jǐdiǎn? what's the time?

几岁了?

jǐ suì le? how old is he? how old are you?

我有事儿

wǒ yǒu shìr, I'm busy

他没有来

tā méi yǒu lái, he didn't come; he hasn't come

*There is still lots more detail to add to this third week's work, but let's not look too closely yet! In time the different elements will all fall into place!*

## 22 第二十二课

Dì èr-shí-èr kè

很有意思  
Hěn yǒu yìsi

- 1- 这个人很热情。  
Zhèi-ge rén hěn rèqing. ①
- 2- 对! 他很热情!  
Dui! Tā hěn rèqing!
- 3- 你以前认识他吗?  
Nǐ yǐqián rènshi tā ma? ②
- 4- 不认识; 我是刚来的。  
Bú rènshi; wǒ shì gāng lài de. ③④⑤

### Notes

- ① This person, this man is zhèi-ge rén. zhèi is the demonstrative *this, that, these, those*, but between it and the noun you must always **include a classifier**. ge, as you now know, is the most common. Other examples: zhèi-ge háizi, *this child*; zhèi-ge gōngyuán, *this park*; zhèi-ge yánsè, *this colour*... Chinese often use zhèi-ge where we would use *that*.
- ② In Chinese, the tense of a verb is expressed by means of an adverb always placed **in front of the verb**. Here, yǐqián, *before, in the past*, is used to express the past tense, usually translated by the past continuous in English. Note that in the reply (item 4) the verb is also in the past tense.
- ③ Before a fourth tone syllable bù takes a second tone: bú.
- ④ The adverb gāng, always comes before the verb, and means *just...*, indicating an action that has just taken place. The verb that follows gāng will have been completed, and so you will always find completion expressed using the particle le, or as here with the construction ... shì... de (note 5).

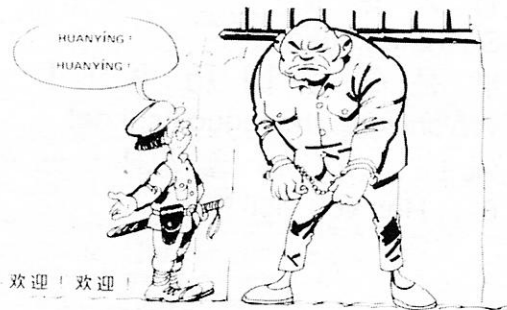
## Twenty-second Lesson 22

number two-ten-two lesson

**Very Interesting!**  
*very have meaning*

- 1- This man is very friendly.  
*this class. person very warm.*
- 2- Yes, he is!  
*correct! he very warm!*
- 3- Did you know him before?  
*you before know him interr.?*
- 4- No; I've (only) just arrived.  
*neg. know; I shì just come de.*

欢迎! 欢迎!



- ⑤ The construction ... shì... de is used to stress a certain element with a sentence. This element is placed between shì and the particle de which, in this construction, always comes at the end of the sentence. It can stress a verb, or any other element of a completed action. The particle le is not needed here, as this construction only concerns completed actions in the past, or that are in the process of being completed. But **never in the future**.

- 5- 哦! ... 欢迎! 欢迎! 你来学什么?  
ò! ... Huānyíng! Huānyíng! Nǐ lái xué shénme? ⑥
- 6- 我是学化学的。  
Wǒ shì xué huàxué de. ⑦
- 7- 好极了!  
Hǎo jíle! ⑧
- 8- 你呢?  
Nǐ ne?
- 9- 我快毕业了!  
Wǒ kuài bìyè le! ⑨
- 10- 什么专业?  
Shénme zhuānyè?
- 11- 我是学中国历史的!  
Wǒ shì xué Zhōngguó lìshǐ de!
- 12- 哦! ... 很有意思!  
ò! ... Hěn yǒu yìsi! ⑩

### Notes

- ⑥ Remember this, it's a very useful expression: huānyíng! *welcome!*
- ⑦ huàxué, *chemistry*. Here the character xué means *the teachings, the study of...* It is also the **verb to study**: nǐ xué shénme? *what are you studying?* xué huàxué, *learning chemistry*. In item 6, "studying chemistry" is stressed using the construction ... shì... de. The person is emphasizing the fact that she is studying chemistry, rather than any other subject. The construc-

- 5- Oh! Welcome! What have you come to study?  
*oh! ... welcome! welcome! you come study what?*
- 6- I'm studying chemistry.  
*I shì study chemistry de.*
- 7- Wonderful!  
*good extreme!*
- 8- And you?  
*you ne?*
- 9- I graduate soon!  
*I about accomplish course le!*
- 10- What is your major?  
*what speciality?*
- 11- I study Chinese history!  
*I shì study China history de!*
- 12- Oh! ... That's very interesting!  
*oh! ... very have meaning!*



- tion shì...de is often used, to insist on a date, a place, an object, or the person performing the action in question. You will soon learn about it in more detail.
- ⑧ *Perfect! That's great!* is expressed here using hǎo-jíle! hǎo means *good* and jíle being a "superlative", is placed after the adjectival verb, and means *extremely*. For example: lěng-jíle, *(it's) really cold*, duō-jíle, *extremely numerous*, etc.
- ⑨ The adverb kuài introduces an action that is about to take place (**immediate future**). At the end of this sentence the particle le, indicates a new situation. kuài liù diǎn bàn le! *it will soon be half past six!* wǒ kuài bìyè le! *I graduate soon!* bìyè means *to graduate*.
- ⑩ Take note of this expression: yǒu yìsi, *it's fun, interesting*; hěn yǒu yìsi, *it's very interesting!* But **be careful with the negative**: méi yǒu yìsi, *it's not interesting, it's boring!*



练习  
Liànxí

- ① 我以前不喜欢，可是现在很喜欢！

Wǒ yǐqián bù xǐhuan, kěshì xiànzài hěn xǐhuan!

- ② 他以前很漂亮！

Tā yǐqián hěn piàoliang!

- ③ 我刚卖了一本书。

Wǒ gāng mǎi-le yì-běn shū.

\*\*\*

## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

- ① It's very interesting.  
Hěn . . . . .

- ② It's nearly half past six!  
. . . . liù diǎn bàn le!

- ③ I'm studying chemistry.  
Wǒ . . . xué huàxué . . .

\*\*\*

• 今天 jīntiān, today. The date always comes before the action. Remember: the first tone, ˉ, indicates a syllable on quite a high note, which is maintained on the same note ("continuous tone"). The second tone, ˊ, indicates a sound that rises, from bass to high. The third tone, ˇ, first drops downwards and then rises up again. Finally ˋ the fourth tone, is a syllable that drops rapidly from high to low.

- ④ 快下雨了！

Kuài xià-yǔ le!

- ⑤ 我是今天来的。

Wǒ shì jīntiān lái de.

## Exercise 1

① Before, I didn't like it, but now I like it very much! ② Before, he used to be very handsome! ③ I have just bought a book. ④ It's going to start raining! ⑤ I arrived today.

\*\*\*

- ④ Did he arrive today?

Tā shì . . . . . lái de . . . ?

## Exercise 2

① - yǒu yìsì ② kuài - ③ - shì - de ④ - jīntiān - ma.

\*\*\*

Have you noticed how to say twenty-two? [two (times) ten (plus) two] is "two-ten-two". Use the page numbers and lesson numbers to learn to count as you go along. Try now: thirteen is 十三 shí sān; eighteen is 十八 shí bā; twenty-one is 二十一 èr shí yī. Now try to count up to twenty! Use the page numbers if you are in difficulty. Be patient! You will get there eventually. For three, 三 sān think of 三板 sānbǎn, a sampan or "boat made with three planks".

Have you noticed that a full-stop in Chinese is a little circle?

23 第二十三课  
Dì èr-shí-sān kè

奇怪  
Qíguài

- 1- 来! 你抽一枝吧!  
Lái! Nǐ chōu yì zhī bā! ①②
- 2- 谢谢! 我不会抽烟!  
Xièxie! Wǒ bú huì chōu yān! ③④
- 3- 真奇怪!  
Zhēn qíguài! ⑤
- 4- 有什么奇怪?  
Yǒu shénme qíguài? ⑥
- 5- 你看! 这儿不是一包烟吗?  
Nǐ kàn! Zhèr bú shì yì bāo yān ma? ⑦

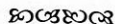
Notes

- ① The verb lái means *to come*, but it is used here, as an imperative, in the sense of *go on! yes, do! do have (one)*, etc.
- ② *To smoke (a cigarette)*, chōu-yān, word-for-word is [to pull, to drag / smoke]. The first part of the expression may be used on its own, as it is here, to say *to have one (cigarette)*, yān, *cigarette* being understood. zhī is the classifier for cigarettes, and for other long thin objects such as thread, chopsticks, pencils, pens, etc.  
In item 2, you have the complete expression: chōu-yān.
- ③ xièxie! *thank you!* can also be used in the negative, to refuse an offer: *no thank you!*

Twenty-third Lesson 23  
number two-ten-three lesson

Strange!  
strange

- 1- Come on! Have one (a cigarette)!  
*come! you drag one class. suggestion!*
- 2- (No) thank you! I don't smoke!  
*thank you! I neg. know how drag smoke!*
- 3- That's strange!  
*really strange!*
- 4- What's strange about it?  
*have what strange?*
- 5- Look! Isn't this a packet of cigarettes?  
*you see! here neg. be one class. smoke interr.?*



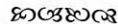
- ④ *To not smoke* is sometimes “to not know how to smoke” in Chinese. *No thank you, I don't smoke* is wǒ bú huì chōu-yān.
- ⑤ zhēn is the adverb *truly*. It is placed just in front of the adjectival verb. zhēn qíguài! *it's truly bizarre!* zhēn hǎo, *it's really good!* zhēn guì! *that's really expensive!* zhēn piàoliang, *it's really pretty!* etc. Remember! Never use the verb *to be* with adjectival verbs!
- ⑥ yǒu shénme...? followed by a verbal adjective: *what is there ...? yǒu shénme qíguài? what's strange about it? yǒu shénme hǎo chī? what is there that is good to eat? yǒu shénme hǎo kàn? what is there that is nice to see? etc.*
- ⑦ bú shì...ma? *isn't this / that...?* This construction is used when an affirmative answer is expected. (“Isn't this a packet of cigarettes?!”) *A pack of cigarettes*, here bāo (meaning *pack, packet*) is used as a **classifier**, between the number and the noun: [one / pack (of) / cigarettes]. You can see that by changing the **classifier** you can express the different presentations of an object: yì-zhī yān, *one cigarette*; yì-bāo yān, *a packet of cigarettes*.

- 6- 这是我老婆的! ... 她抽烟!  
Zhè shì wǒ lǎopo de! ... Tā chōu yān! ⑧
- 7- 你这儿有筷子吗?  
Nǐ zhèr yǒu kuàizi ma? ⑨
- 8- 这儿没有!  
Zhèr méi yǒu!
- 9- 奇怪!  
Qíguài!
- 10- 有什么奇怪?  
Yǒu shénme qíguài?
- 11- 中国人不是用筷子吃饭吗?  
Zhōngguó rén bú shì yòng kuàizi chī fàn ma? ⑩⑪
- 12- 是啊! 我这儿没有, 可我家有啊!  
Shì a! Wǒ zhèr méi yǒu, kě wǒ jiā yǒu a! ⑫

### Notes

- ⑧ lǎopo is slang for *wife*. The terms fūren or qīzi are more respectful! In this sentence, the noun following the nominalizing particle de is understood: wǒ lǎopo de (yān), *my wife's (cigarettes)*. It is enough to say wǒ lǎopo de, *my wife's*. Do not confuse zhè shì wǒ lǎopo! *this is my wife!* and zhè shì wǒ lǎopo de! *these are my wife's! it's my wife's!*
- ⑨ Note that place follows subject: [you / here]. kuàizi means *chopsticks*; this character is composed of the character *quick*,

- 6- That's my wife's! She smokes!  
*that shi I wife de! ... she drag smoke!*
- 7- Have you got chopsticks here?  
*you here have chopsticks interr.?*
- 8- No, I haven't any here.  
*here neg. have!*
- 9- That's odd!  
*strange!*
- 10- What's odd?  
*have what strange?*
- 11- Don't the Chinese eat with chopsticks?  
*China person neg. be use chopsticks eat food interr.?*
- 12- Of course! I haven't any here, but I have at home!  
*be exclamative! I here neg. have, but my home have exclam.!*



▷ *rapid*, pronounced kuài (and which indicates the pronunciation), under the *bamboo* radical, (chopsticks often being made from bamboo).

⑩ yòng, *with, using*, followed by the object used to carry out the action. This sort of preposition **always precedes the verb**. *To eat with chopsticks* is [with / chopsticks / to eat]: yòng kuàizi chī-fàn; *to write with a brush* is: [with / brush / to write].

⑪ *To eat* is chī-fàn (word-for-word: [to eat (cooked) rice]); there are many verbs in Chinese followed by a fixed object. For example, *to read* is kàn-shū, [to see / book]; *to smoke* is, as you have just seen, chōu-yān, [to pull / smoke], and *to write* is xiě-zì, [to write / characters]. When necessary the object may be understood, or a **determinant** may be placed **between** the verb and the object as, for example, chī Zhōngguó fàn [eat / China / food], or xiě máobǐ zì [write / brush / characters]. Note the interrogative construction bú shì... ma? used when an affirmative reply is expected (see note 7).

⑫ wǒ zhèr méi yǒu, *I haven't any here*, [I / here / not have] but you could also say: zhèr wǒ méi yǒu, [here / I / not have]. The rule is to always put **the place before the action**, that is to say before the verb. kě, *but*, is synonymous with kěshì. Also note the numerous exclamations at the end of sentences. Here a! emphasizes the verb: shì a! *yes it is! yes of course!* wǒ jiā yǒu a! *but at home I've got some!*

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 对不起！我不抽烟！  
Dui bu qǐ! Wǒ bù chōu-yān!
- ② 我家里有，可是我这儿没有！  
Wǒ jiāli yǒu, kěshì wǒ zhèr méi yǒu!
- ③ 他用筷子吃饭。  
Tā yòng kuàizi chī-fàn.
- ④ 中国人用筷子吃饭吗？  
Zhōngguó rén yòng kuàizi chī-fàn ma?

\*\*\*

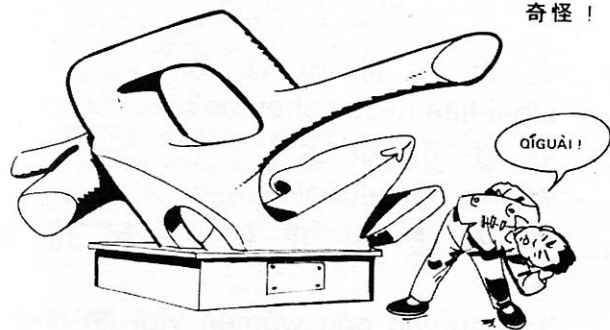
完成句子  
Wánchéng jùzi

- ① Sorry, I haven't a pen.  
... .., wǒ méi yǒu bǐ.
- ② It seems that your friend doesn't like this!  
Nǐ-de péngyou ..... bù xǐhuan zhèi-ge!
- ③ I only eat Chinese food at home.  
Wǒ zài jiāli cái\* chī ..... ..
- ④ They don't know how to eat with chopsticks.  
Tāmen bú huì .... kuài zi chī-fàn.

\* 才 *cái* is an adverb meaning *only, not until*: the restriction it indicates refers to the preceding element in the sentence.

## Exercise 1

- ① Sorry, I don't smoke! ② I've got some at home, but not here!  
③ He's eating with chopsticks! ④ Do Chinese eat with chopsticks?



\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

- ① dui bu qǐ - ② - hǎoxiàng - ③ - Zhōngguó fàn ④ - yòng -

A very important adverb has been introduced in the last exercise 才 *cái*. It indicates a restriction ("only"; "not... until") referring to a date, a place, the subject of the action, etc. It is always the element preceding 才 *cái* that receives the restriction: 我明天才走 *wǒ míngtiān cái zǒu*, I am not leaving until tomorrow, [I / tomorrow / only / go]; 他今天才告诉我 *tā jīntiān cái gào su wǒ*, he only told me today, [he / today / only / tell / me]. This will be discussed in more detail later.

24 第二十四课  
Dì èr-shí-sì kè

进城去  
Jìn chéng qù

- 1- 礼拜天你做什么?  
Lǐbài-tiān nǐ zuò shénme? ①
- 2- 我还不知道!  
Wǒ hái bù zhīdào! ②
- 3- 要不要跟我们一起进城去?  
Yào-bú-yào gēn wǒmen yìqǐ jìn chéng qù? ③④
- 4- 好! 可以! 到哪儿去?  
Hǎo! Kěyǐ! Dào nǎr qù? ⑤⑥

Notes

- ① lǐbài-tiān, *Sunday*; lǐbài means *week*; for the first six days of the week, lǐbài is followed by the numbers one to six! So *Monday* is lǐbài-yī, *Tuesday* is lǐbài-èr. In the People's Republic of China, xīngqī replaces lǐbài: e.g. xīngqī-tiān, xīngqī-yī, etc.
- ② Remember that in a negative sentence hái, *still*, always comes before the negative: hái bù, or hái méi yǒu. Here we have zhīdào, *to know something*. Remember that *to know someone* is rènshi (see lesson 4).
- ③ *To go with us* is gēn wǒmen qù, or gēn wǒmen yìqǐ, *to go together with us*. The element "with us (together)" is placed, like all prepositions, **before the verb** concerned.
- ④ *To go to town* is "to enter town". You can say jìn chéng, or jìn chéng qù.

Twenty-fourth Lesson 24

number two-ten-four lesson

Going to Town

enter town go

- 1- What are you doing on Sunday?  
*Sunday you do what?*
- 2- I don't know yet!  
*I still neg. know!*
- 3- Do you want to come to town with us?  
*wish neg. wish accompany we together enter town go?*
- 4- Yes! OK! Where are you going?  
*good! possible! to where go?*

你认识路吗?

你认识路吗?

认识!



- ⑤ Remember this expression: kěyǐ! *yes! OK! that's feasible! why not? that's possible!* etc. kěyǐ is in fact the verb *to be able*. wǒ kěyǐ, *I can!* nǐ kěyǐ-bù-kěyǐ? *can you?*
- ⑥ dào means *towards, to*, and introduces the location. dào is a preposition. The "place" group formed in this way always comes **before the verb** (before the action). So *to go to China* is simply qù Zhōngguó, but you will also often hear the construction dào Zhōngguó qù; also: *to go home*, dào jiāli qù; *to go to a restaurant*, dào fànguǎnr qù. The construction "qù + place" is admittedly the simplest, but you can't always only use the simple ones! You will see that **the most common form**, in complex sentences is dào... qù.

- 5- 去南京路看看!  
Qù Nánjīng Lù kàn-kan! ⑦
- 6- 那儿有什么好看的?  
Nǎr yǒu shénme hǎo kàn de? ⑧
- 7- 那儿有很多商店!  
Nàr yǒu hěn duō shāngdiàn! ⑨
- 8- 什么商店?  
Shénme shāngdiàn?
- 9- 各种各样的商店都有!  
Gè-zhǒng-gè-yàng de shāngdiàn dōu yǒu! ⑩

## Notes

- ⑦ Nánjīng Lù, *Nanking Road*, one of the main shopping streets in Shanghai.  
kàn-kan, *to take a look, to have a little look*. The strength of the verb is attenuated by repeating it and the second syllable is a neutral tone.
- ⑧ Don't confuse nàr, *over there*, and nǎr, *where*? Here again, **intonation** is very important for correct expression! hǎo kàn-de, *beautiful (to see)*. Understood: "things that are beautiful to see". The noun is omitted. Only the determinant is expressed, composed of the adjective [good / to see] and the nominalizing particle de. You have already met (see lesson 12) xiǎo-de, *a small one / a little one*, dà-de, *a big one*, and also guì-de, *an expensive one / expensive ones*, cháng-de, *a long one*, hóng-sè-de, *a red one / red ones*, etc.
- ⑨ hěn duō, *many, a lot of...* (followed by a noun); always use hěn with duō.

- 5- We're going down Nanking Road to have a look!  
*go Nanking road look look!*
- 6- What is there to look at there?  
*there have what good look de?*
- 7- There are lots of shops there!  
*there have very many shops!*
- 8- What sort of shops?  
*what shops?*
- 9- There are all sorts of shops!  
*each sort each kind de shops all have!*

有什么好看的?

有什么好看的?



- ⑩ The expression gè-zhǒng-gè-yàng de means *all sorts of*; it is always followed by a noun: gè-zhǒng-gè-yàng de rén, *all sorts of people*; gè-zhǒng-gè-yàng de cài, *all sorts of dishes*, etc. The adverb dōu **marks the plural**, the quantity, when it is necessary to insist: wǒmen dōu qù, *we are all going*; it also expresses the inclusive: wǒ dōu dǒng, *I understand everything*; wǒmen dōu hěn hǎo, *we are all very well*; dōu hěn hǎochī, *everything is very good (to eat)*, etc.

24 10 - 有百货商店吗?

Yǒu bǎihuò shāngdiàn ma?

11 - 有! 也有书店! 也有饭馆儿!

Yǒu! Yě yǒu shūdiàn! Yě yǒu fànguǎnr! ①

12 - 很有意思! 我跟你们一起去吧!

Hěn yǒu yìsi! Wǒ gēn nǐmen yìqǐ qù ba! ②

13 - 好! 礼拜天我来接你!

Hǎo! Lǐbài-tiān wǒ lái jiē nǐ!

14 - 好极了! 谢谢你!

Hǎo jí le! Xièxie nǐ!

□

### Notes

- ① Pay attention to pronunciation: “shoo dee’en”. Don’t stress the final “n”. Restaurant: fànguǎnr. The final “er” is indicated by a character that does not have any meaning, used here for nota- ▶

\*\*\*

### Exercises

练习

Liànxí

① 他们跟谁一起去? 跟我!

Tāmen gēn shéi yìqǐ qù? Gēn wǒ!

② 我到那儿去看看!

Wǒ dào nàr qù kàn-kan!

③ 你到那儿去做什么? 去吃饭!

Nǐ dào nàr qù zuò shénme? Qù chī-fàn!

10 - Are there department stores?

have 100 goods shops interr.?

11 - Yes, there are. And bookshops, and restaurants!

have! also have bookshop! also have restaurant!

12 - Great! I'll go with you then!

very have meaning! I follow you together go suggestion!

13 - Right! I'll come and fetch you on Sunday!

good! Sunday I come fetch you!

14 - Perfect! I thank you!

good extremely! thank you you!

北京话

- ▶ tion of the **Beijing pronunciation**; you have already seen this ending in nǎr, where? in nàr, over there! and in zhèr, here.

⑫ “To go with...” is, remember, [with / ... / to go]. In Chinese, preposition groups are always placed **before the verbal group**. yìqǐ, in this construction, is sometimes omitted: wǒ gēn nǐ qù, I'm going with you; nǐ gēn shéi qù? who are you going with?

⑬ xièxie! thank you! xièxie nǐ! thanks to you; xièxie nǐmen! (we) thank you, (I) thank you all, etc.

\*\*\*

④ 他有很多朋友。

Tā yǒu hěn duō péngyou.

⑤ 你认识路吗? 认识!

Nǐ rènshi lù ma? Rènshi!

### Exercise 1

- ① Who are they going with? With me! ② I'm going there to take a look! ③ What are you going to do there? I'm going there to eat!  
④ He has many friends. ⑤ Do you know the way? Yes, I do!

## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

- ① I'm going to your house on Sunday.  
Lǐbài-tiān wǒ . . . nǐ jiāli qù.
- ② Don't you know the way? It doesn't matter! I'll go with you!  
Nǐ bú rènshi lù ma? Méi guānxi! Wǒ . . . nǐ yìqǐ qù!
- ③ I would really like to go and take a look at Nanking Road.  
Wǒ zhēn xiǎng . . . Nánjīng lù qù kàn-kan!
- ④ Are there department stores in Paris too? Yes, there are!  
Báilí yě yǒu bǎihuò shāngdiàn ma? . . . !

Remember to mark the important distinctions between the consonants b and p, d and t, g and k, z and c, j and q, zh and ch. In order to distinguish these pairs of "aspirated" or "non-aspirated" consonants correctly, do the "sheet of paper" test. Hold a sheet of paper by one corner, and with your hand in front of your forehead, hide your face with the paper, holding it close to your forehead. Say "ba"! The sheet of paper must not move, because you do not aspirate this sound. Now say "pa"! The paper should be blown sharply forwards with a strong puff of air. Now say these sounds being careful to mark the difference bā, pā; bá, pá; bǎ, pǎ; bà, pà; and now say the sounds dā, tā; dá, tà; dǎ, tǎ; dà, tà.

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

① - dào - ② - gēn - ③ - dào - ④ - yǒu.

You now know the personal pronouns: 我 wǒ, I, me; 你 nǐ, you; 他 tā, he, him. By adding 们 men, you can form the plural personal pronouns: 我们 wǒmen, we, us, 你们 nǐmen, you; 他们 tāmen, they, them. Note that in the third person only the character distinguishes he, 他 tā from she, 她 tā; this applies also to they (masculine) 他们 tāmen and they (feminine) 她们 tāmen. There is also a neuter personal pronoun for objects, concepts, animals etc. but it is not used very frequently. It is 它 and is also pronounced tā.

\*\*\*



25 第二十五课  
Dì èr-shí-wǔ kè

去天安门  
Qù Tiānānmén

- 1- 去天安门要多长时间?  
Qù Tiānānmén yào duō-cháng shíjiān? ①
- 2- 大概要半个小时。  
Dàgài yào bàn-ge xiǎoshí. ②
- 3- 好! 那我下午去!  
Hǎo! Nà wǒ xiàwǔ qù!
- 4- 你认识路吗?  
Nǐ rènshi lù ma?
- 5- 不认识! ... 请你告诉我怎么去!  
Bú rènshi! ... Qǐng nǐ gàosu wǒ zěnme qù! ③

Notes

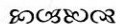
- ① Tiānānmén, *Gate of Heavenly Peace*, right in the centre of Beijing. yào, which you have already seen with the meaning *to want* also means, as it does here, *to be necessary, it must, we must*, etc. Note that the aim is stated simply at the beginning of the sentence, for example: chī-fàn yào yǒu kuàizi! *to eat rice, you must have chopsticks!* dào Bālí qù, yào duō-cháng shíjiān? *to go to Paris, how long do you need?* duō-cháng shíjiān? *how long?* word-for-word: [how long time?]. The same question is used for the length of a piece of fabric and for length of time. nǐ yào duō-cháng de? *how long do you need it? how long must it be?*

Twenty-fifth Lesson 25

number two-ten-five lesson

Getting to the Gate of Heavenly Peace  
go heaven peace gate

- 1- How long does it take to get to Tian anmen?  
*go heaven peace gate need much long time?*
- 2- About half an hour.  
*probably need half class. hour.*
- 3- Right! I'll go this afternoon!  
*good! so I afternoon go!*
- 4- Do you know the way?  
*you know road interr.?*
- 5- No, I don't! ... Please tell me how to get there!  
*neg. know! ... please you inform I how go!*



- ② dàgài, *doubtless, probably, more or less*. The adverb always precedes the verbal group. bàn-ge xiǎoshí, *half an hour*. bàn means *half* and ge is the classifier. xiǎoshí means *hour*, where as the **time** on the clock is expressed using diǎn. There is the same difference as in English between “six hours” and “six o'clock”. In Chinese: liù-ge xiǎoshí, *six hours*, and liù diǎn, *six o'clock*. liù-diǎn bàn le! *it's half past six!*
- ③ qǐng nǐ..., *could I ask you to..., please could you...; qǐng nǐmen..., please would you... gàosu, here means to indicate, show, say, explain, or, as in lesson 18, to inform. zěnme qù how to get there, the way to go. Note how no! is expressed here: by repeating the verb from the question in the negative.*

6- 好! 你先上三十一路公共汽车;

Hǎo! Nǐ xiān shàng sān-shí-yī lù gōng-gòng qìchē; ④⑤⑥

7 坐三站; 到五道口下车。

zuò sān zhàn; dào Wǔdàokǒu xià chē.  
⑦⑧

8- 以后呢?

Yǐhòu ne? ⑨

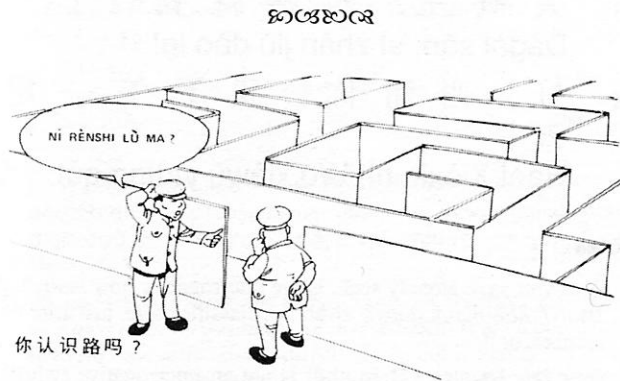
9- 以后再换二十二路车。

Yǐhòu zài huàn èr-shí-èr lù chē.

### Notes

- ④ xiān, *first of all*, comes before the verbal group, like all adverbs. nǐ xiān qù, yǐhòu wǒ qù, *you go first, then afterwards I'll go*; xiān chī cài, zài hē tāng! *let's eat the dishes first, then have the soup!* xiān tán zhèi-ge, zài tán nèi-ge! *let's discuss this first, and then we'll discuss that!*
- ⑤ shàng is the verb *to go up, to get on, to take* (a form of transport). "Number 31" bus: in Chinese you must say "route 31", "line 31" (sān-shí-yī lù), or "the 31 route bus" (sān-shí-yī lù chē). Be careful with the pronunciation of lù, it is "loo" as in "loop"!
- ⑥ Bus: [public vehicle]. gōnggòng means *public, for everyone*. qìchē means *automobile*.
- ⑦ zuò, originally means *seated, to sit down*. Here it is used in the sense of *to take* (a form of transport), *by, on*. zuò qìchē, *by car*; zuò chuán, *by boat*; zuò huǒchē, *by train*; zuò fēijī, *by plane*. But beware! You have already met qí zìxíngchē *by bike!* "ride" a bike. zuò sān zhàn, *to take (it) (for) three* ▶

- 6- Of course! First you take the number 31 bus; good! you firstly on three-ten-one route public motor vehicle;
- 7 after three stops, you get off at Fiveways Crossroads! sit three station; arrive five-way-mouth down vehicle!
- 8- And then?  
*after ne?*
- 9- Then you change to the number 22 bus.  
*after again change two-ten-two route vehicle.*



- ▶ stops, to go three stops, remain seated for three stops. Not to be confused with *to do*, which is also pronounced zuò but which is a different character.
- ⑧ xià chē, *to get off the bus*. You have seen shàng chē, *to take the bus / to get on the bus*.
- ⑨ yǐhòu, *after, afterwards, then*. You have already met (lesson 22) yǐqian, *before, previously*. zài, *again, one more time*, indicates the repetition of an action. zài lái yí-ge tāng! *bring us some more soup!* or *bring the soup afterwards!* At the theater, you may hear: zài lái yí-ge! *encore! more! more!* Note also that *goodbye!* is zàijiàn! (word-for-word [again / see]).

- 10 - 坐几站呢?  
Zuò jǐ zhàn ne? ⑩
- 11 - 我忘了... 反正你问吧!  
Wǒ wàng-le! ... Fǎnzhèng nǐ wèn ba!
- 12 - 天安门, 谁都知道! ...  
Tiānānmén, shéi dōu zhīdào! ... ⑪
- 13 - 大概三、四站就到了!  
Dàgài sān, sì zhàn jiù dào le! ⑫
- 14 - 好! 谢谢你! 我下午一定去!  
Hǎo! Xièxie nǐ! Wǒ xiàwǔ yíding qù! □

## Notes

- ⑩ jǐ, as you have already seen, is the interrogative *how many?*: jǐ zhàn? *how many stops?* zhàn is a classifier here, just after the number, or jǐ.
- ⑪ *Everyone knows it!* Here shéi is not an interrogative (who?), but has the sense of *whoever, anybody, everybody*, coupled with dōu, to mark the **plural**, the **entirety**. shéi dōu dǒng! ▶

\*\*\*

## Exercises

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 去北京要多长时间?  
Qù Běijīng yào duō cháng shíjiān?
- ② 半个小时够吗?  
Bàn-ge xiǎoshí gòu ma?

- 10 - For how many stops?  
*sit how many station ne?*
- 11 - I can't remember! Anyway, you just ask!  
*I forget-le! ... anyway you ask suggestion!*
- 12 - Everybody knows Tian anmen!  
*heaven peace gate, who all know! ...*
- 13 - About three or four stops, and you'll be there!  
*probably three, four station then arrive-le!*
- 14 - Fine! Thank you! I'm surely going this afternoon!  
*good! thank you! I afternoon certainly go!*

- ▶ *everyone understands!* shéi dōu qù, *everyone's going*; shéi dōu zhīdào! *everyone knows that!* etc. Synonymous phrase: dài jiā dōu, *everyone / all...*; dài jiā dōu zhīdào! *everyone knows that!*
- ⑫ jiù, *and then* (to show one action following another). jiù dào-le, *and then (that very minute) we arrived*. dào is not a preposition here (to / towards / in the direction of), but is verbal: *to arrive* (somewhere). dào-le ma? *are we there?* tāmen dào-le méi yǒu? *have they arrived?* hái méi yǒu dào ne! *we aren't there yet!*

\*\*\*

- ③ 我们快到了!  
Wǒmen kuài dào le!
- ④ 你跟我走, 好吗?  
Nǐ gēn wǒ qù, hǎo ma?

## Exercise 1

- ① How long does it take to go to Peking? ② Will half an hour be long enough? ③ We're nearly there! ④ You come with me! OK?

## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

- ① Everyone knows the way!  
Dàjiā dōu rènshi . . .
- ② Do you like taking the train? Yes, I do!  
Nǐ xǐhuan . . . huǒ chē ma? . . . . .!
- ③ Where does one get off the bus?  
Dào . . xià chē?
- ④ Afterwards, we'll have time to chat.  
Yǐhòu, hái yǒu . . . . . tán!

\*\*\*

You will have noticed that different characters may have the same sound. According to the context, and by learning to recognize the characters, you will be able to distinguish 坐 zuò in 坐汽车 zuò qìchē, to go by car, from 做 zuò, to do. 坐 means to sit and also to ride... in a vehicle that you are not driving: so 坐火车 zuò huǒchē, to go by train. Do not confuse with 骑 qí, to mount, to straddle, used for riding bicycles, motor bikes, horses, etc. Also, by repeating complete sentences you will be able to recognize words

## Exercise 2

① - lù ② - zuò - xǐhuan ③ - nǎ - ④ - shíjiān -.



\*\*\*

rather than characters, and distinguish for instance, 下午 xiàwǔ, afternoon from 下车 xià chē, get out of the car! Don't try to translate word-for-word: try to keep the complete sentence in mind.

Note the punctuation 、 called a "semi-comma". It is used to separate the items in a list: 三、四站 sān sì zhàn, three or four stations; 五、六个人 wǔ liù ge rén, five to six people / five or six people.

26 第二十六课  
Dì èr-shí-liù kè

他们决定了!  
Tāmen juéding le!

- 1- 他跟你说过没有?  
Tā gēn nǐ shuō-guo méi yǒu? ①②
- 2- 说过什么?  
Shuō-guo shénme?
- 3- 他们决定了!  
Tāmen juéding le!
- 4- 决定什么了?  
Juéding shénme le?
- 5- 他们俩儿快要结婚了!  
Tāmen liǎr kuài yào jiéhūn le! ③④

Notes

- ① *To say something to someone* can be expressed by: [with / someone / to say...]. In this lesson, you are going to meet *gēn*, *with*, several times. It can sometimes be translated as *and*. Remember that the prepositional clause always comes **before the action**. Here, “to someone” comes before “to say”.
- ② *méi yǒu* is the negative for a completed action, and is used to express the **alternative interrogative**. The verbal suffix *-guo* indicates a **completed action**, that has taken place at least once, in the past in this example. Compare: *nǐ qù-bú-qù?* *are you going?* *nǐ qù-le méi yǒu?* *did you go?* *nǐ qù-guo méi yǒu?* *have you already been?* You will come back in more detail to the verbal suffix *-guo*. For the moment note that it is translated with the **past perfect**, and sometimes using the word *already*. *tā shuō-guo méi yǒu?* *has he told you? has he already said so?* ▶

Twenty-sixth Lesson 26

number two-ten-six lesson

They've Made up Their Minds!  
*they decide le!*

- 1 - Did he tell you?  
*he with you speak experiential neg. have?*
- 2 - Tell me what?  
*speak experiential what?*
- 3 - They've made up their minds!  
*they decide le!*
- 4 - What have they decided?  
*decide what le?*
- 5 - The two of them are getting married!  
*they two soon marry le!*



- ▶③ *tāmen liǎr* means *the two of them*. It is the equivalent of *tāmen liǎng-ge rén* [those two / those two people]. Note that in the character *liǎ* one element is the character *liǎng*, *two*, but with the addition of the *person* radical on the left. Pronounced with the Beijing accent *liǎ* it has a final “er” (*liǎr*), shown by a character that does not add anything to the meaning.
- ④ The construction *kuàiyào... le!* is used to express the **immediate future**. It is an equivalent to *kuài... le!* that you saw in *kuài biyè le!* *soon to graduate*. Note for example: *wǒ kuàiyào zǒu le!* *I shall go soon; I'll leave in a minute*. *kuàiyào chī-fàn le!* *we can soon [start to] eat*. *tiān kuàiyào hēi le!* *the sky will soon be black! it will be getting dark soon!* Just remember that you can translate this with “to be about to”, or by “soon... (+ future)”.

- 6- 谁呀?  
Shéi ya? ⑤
- 7- 老张跟小红啊!  
Lǎo Zhāng gēn Xiǎo Hóng a! ⑥
- 8- 不可能!  
Bù kěnéng!
- 9- 真的! 下个月就结婚!  
Zhēnde! Xià-ge yuè jiù jiéhūn! ⑦⑧
- 10- 可他昨天说要跟我结婚!  
Kě tā zuótiān shuō yào gēn wǒ jiéhūn! ⑨⑩
- 11- 你看! 这个人!  
Nǐ kàn! Zhèi-ge rén!
- 12- 对! 他就是这么个人!  
Dui! Tā jiù shì zhème ge rén! ⑪ □

## Notes

- ⑤ shéi ya? *well who then?* The exclamation ya at the end of the sentence softens the intonation. You should make a liaison between ya and the previous word, which ends here with the sound “ee”: pronounce it “shayee’a?”.
- ⑥ gēn, *with*, is translated *and* here. It is a conjunction between the two subjects Lǎo Zhāng, *Old Zhang*, and Xiǎo Hóng, *Little Miss Hong*. Lǎo and Xiǎo are two diminutives used to address people you know well. The latter is used for someone younger than the speaker. Note also the sentence-final exclamation a, which softens the tone, and makes the sentence more colloquial.
- ⑦ zhēnde! *but it is, really! but it's true!* Also note: shì zhēnde ma? *is that true? can that be so?* and the synonymous expression zhēnde ma? *is that true?* The verb can be understood here shì, *to be*. But **never forget**, after an adjective, the **nominating particle de**.

- 6- Who are?  
*who then?*
- 7- Zhang and Hong are!  
*old Zhang with little Hong exclam.!*
- 8- Impossible!  
*neg. possible!*
- 9- Really! They're getting married next month!  
*really de! next month then marry!*
- 10- But yesterday he said he wanted me to marry him!  
*but he yesterday speak wish with I marry!*
- 11- You see what he's like!  
*you look! this class. person!*
- 12- Yes! That's just what he's like!  
*correct! he then be thus class. person!*



- ⑧ *Next month is xià-ge yuè. Last month is, as you have probably guessed, shàng-ge yuè. This month is zhèi-ge yuè. Here the adverb jiù tells us that an action will take place in the immediate future and probably sooner than the speaker thought. It is generally translated by already, right away. wǒ míngtiān jiù zǒu, tomorrow I'll be on my way already; wǒ xià-ge yuè jiù qù, I'm going next month already. You will also meet jiù with a completed action, meaning “earlier than expected”: tā zuótiān jiù-lái, he already arrived yesterday. jiù has as opposite the adverb cáí, introduced briefly at the end of the 23rd lesson.*
- ⑨ kě is synonymous with kèshì, *but*. Remember to always place the **date before the verb**: tā zuótiān shuō, *he told me yesterday, yesterday he said (that)...*; “that” is not translated! zuótiān, *yesterday*, is sufficient to mark the past, no other element is necessary. As you go, remember jīntiān, *today*, and míngtiān, *tomorrow*. yào indicates the immediate future, but is also the verb *to want*. Here both meanings can be accepted.
- ⑩ Remember, prepositions always come **before the verb**; “to get married to...” is: [with... marry]. *He is marrying me, [he / with / me / to marry], tā gēn wǒ jiéhūn.*
- ⑪ An idiomatic expression: “he's like that!”, “that's the way he is!”, “it's just like him!”, “that's him alright!”, etc.

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 你是跟谁去的?  
Nǐ shì gēn shéi qù de?
- ② 他为什么没来?  
Tā wèishénme méi lái?
- ③ 你看! 这儿很安静!  
Nǐ kàn! Zhèr hěn ānjìng!
- ④ 我们快要走了!  
Wǒmen kuài yào zòu le!

\*\*\*

完成句子  
Wánchéng jùzi

- ① Is that true? Yes, it is!  
Shì . . . . de ma? Shì!
- ② It's going to rain! It's going to start raining!  
. . . . xià-yǔ le! kuài yào . . . . le!
- ③ Why didn't he come yesterday?  
Tā wèishénme . . . . . méi yǒu . . . ?
- ④ Has he made his decision?  
Tā . . . . . -le méi yǒu?

## Exercise 1

- ① Who did you go with? ② Why hasn't he come? ③ You see! It's very quiet here! ④ We are going soon!



你看! 这儿很安静!

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

- ① - zhēn - ② kuài - xià yǔ - ③ - zuótiān - lái ④ - juéding -

没 méi is the contraction of the negative of the completed action 没有 méi yǒu. These two negatives are synonymous.

If you are using the recordings you will notice that from today onwards the rhythm accelerates, in order to approach the real speed of a normal Chinese conversation, which will be reached in a few weeks. Do not hesitate to listen to the dialogue several times, repeating each sentence over and over again, until you get it right.

27 第二十七课  
Dì èr-shí-qī kè

他在北大  
Tā zài Běi Dà

- 1- 老陈现在在哪儿?  
Lǎo Chén xiànzài zài nǎr? ①
- 2- 我想他在北大。  
Wǒ xiǎng tā zài Běi Dà. ②
- 3- 哦! ... 他在那儿学什么?  
ò! ... Tā zài nàr xué shénme?
- 4- 他不是学生! 他已经当老师了!  
Tā bú shì xuésheng! Tā yǐjīng dāng lǎoshī le! ③
- 5- 那么, 他教什么?  
Nàme, tā jiāo shénme? ④
- 6- 他肯定是教法文!  
Tā kěndìng shì jiāo fǎwén!

Notes

- ① Lǎo, *old, my old friend...*, is a diminutive followed by the last name. xiànzài, *now*; zài, *to be at...* (followed by a place). Here, as the question concerns a place, it is the interrogative nǎr that follows the verb “to be at”: zài nǎr? *where is...?*
- ② You have met the verb xiǎng meaning *to wish to* (lesson 8, note 5). Here, it has another meaning: *to think (that)...* And xiǎng is then followed by a complete sentence (subject + verb [+ comple- ▶

Twenty-seventh Lesson 27

number two-ten-seven lesson

He's at Beijing University

he at Beijing University

- 1- Where is Chen now?  
*old Chen now at where?*
- 2- I think he's at Beijing University.  
*I think he at Beijing University.*
- 3- Oh! ... What is he studying there?  
*oh! ... he at there study what?*
- 4- He isn't a student! He is already a teacher!  
*he neg. be student! he already have position teacher le!*
- 5- I see, what does he teach?  
*in that case, he teach what?*
- 6- He must teach French!  
*he certainly be teach French!*



- ▶ ment]), expressing the idea. (lesson 16, note 9). Běi Dà: abbreviation of Běijīng Dàxué [Beijing / university], *University of Peking*; remember: **the adjective always precedes the noun!** This is a **basic** rule in Chinese grammar.
- ③ bú shì: Note that the verb *to be* is pronounced here as a **neutral tone**. yǐjīng... le, *already...* This expression means that an action has already taken place, or has already started: tā yǐjīng zǒu le! *he has already gone!* dāng, *to have the responsibility of, to be in the role of...*; lǎoshī, *teacher*. You can also say tā shì lǎoshī, [he / to be / teacher].
  - ④ nàme! is synonymous with nà, *well then! so! ...*; jiāo, *to teach*, is not to be confused with jiào (lesson 18, note 10) meaning *to be called...* Compare nǐ jiāo shénme? *what do you teach?* with nǐ jiào shénme? *what is your name?* Remember to pronounce the **tones** carefully, it's the key to success!



- 7- 你为什么说“肯定”？  
Nǐ wèishénme shuō «kěndìng»? ⑤
- 8- 因为他父亲是法国人！  
Yīnwèi tā fùqīn shì Fǎguó rén! ⑥
- 9- 真的吗？  
Zhēnde ma?
- 10- 当然是真的！  
Dāngrán shì zhēnde!
- 11- 怪不得他法文说得那么好！  
Guài-bu-dé tā fǎwén shuō de nàme hǎo! ⑦⑧
- 12- 你也会说法文吗？  
Nǐ yě huì shuō fǎwén ma?

## Notes

- ⑤ wèishénme? *why?* is often followed by a reply using yīnwèi, *because...*
- ⑥ Remember: Fǎguó means *France* (fǎ is the first syllable of the Chinese phonetic transcription of France, which is Fǎlǎnxī, abbreviated to fǎ; guó means *country*). *French, the French language* is fǎyǔ (where yǔ means *language*), or fǎwén (see item 11). In fact yǔ is the word for the spoken tongue, whereas wén means also the written language; but this distinction is becoming less clear. Note the names for other countries Yīngguó, *England*; Měiguó, *America, the United States*; Jiānádà, *Canada*.
- ⑦ Memorize this useful expression guài-bu-dé...! *not surprising that...* which is followed directly by whatever inspired the remark: guài-bu-dé tā méi yǒu lái! *it's not surprising that he hasn't come!* (Note that there is no subjunctive in Chinese! No conjugations! Is it not simpler than you thought?) ▶

- 7- Why do you say “must”?  
*you why speak “certainly”?*
- 8- Because his father is French!  
*because he father be France person!*
- 9- Is that true?  
*really de interr.?*
- 10- Of course, it's true!  
*of course be really de!*
- 11- No wonder he speaks French so well, then!  
*strange neg. he French speak de so good!*
- 12- Can you speak French, too?  
*you also know how speak French interr.?*

㊦㊦㊦㊦



- ▶ ⑧ fǎwén shuō-de nàme hǎo, [French (he) speaks/ so well]. Here you have a **manner adverb** (“so well”). It is introduced by the particle **de** (but this is not the nominalizing particle **de** used for expressing the nominalization or possession. This **de** **always follows a verb**, and introduces the “degree” attained by the verb): when a verb is followed in English by an adverb expressing manner, level or degree, then it is **necessary** to place the particle **de** between the verb and the manner adverb. So in the sentences “he eats / too fast”, “she writes / well”, “he drives / badly”, “they walk / too slowly”, “he reads / very well”, etc., **de** will always come between the verb and the adverb: tā chī de hěn kuài, *he eats / very fast*. tā shuō de hěn hǎo, *she speaks / very well*.
- nàme hǎo, *so good, so well*. Followed by an adjectival verb, **nàme** is used to express *so, as that*: nàme guì! *as expensive as that!* nàme hǎo chī! *so good (to eat), so delicious!*

13 – 我不会!

Wǒ bú huì! ⑨

14 – 那...你怎么知道他的法文好呢?

Nà ... nǐ zěnmē zhīdao tā-de fǎwén hǎo ne? ⑩

15 – 我是听人家说的!

Wǒ shì tīng rénjiā shuō de! ⑪ □

### Notes

⑨ Don't confuse huì ("to know how" to do something, speak a language, etc.; having been taught), and zhīdao ("to know" something, to have knowledge of information, to have heard that...). wǒ bú huì kāi-chē, *I don't know how to drive*; wǒ bú huì shuō yīngwén, *I don't know how to speak English*; nǐ huì-bú-huì xiě zhèi-ge zì? *do you know how to / can you write this character?* wǒ zhīdao tā shì guǎngdōng-rén, *I know (that) he is Cantonese*; nǐ zhīdao tā de míngzì ma? *do you know his name?* nǐ zěnmē zhīdao ne? *how do you know? ..*

⑩ zěnmē...? *how...? zěnmē qù ne? how shall we go, then?* zhèi-ge zì zěnmē xiě? *how does one write this character?* zhèi-ge, zhōngwén, zěnmē shuō? *how do you say this in Chinese?* .. Note the particle ne, placed at the end of an interrogative sentence, to emphasize the question. zěnmē qù ne? *well then, how shall we go?* nǐ zěnmē hái bù zhīdao ne? *well, how is it that you don't know yet? ..*

\*\*\*

13 – No, I can't!

*I neg. know how!*

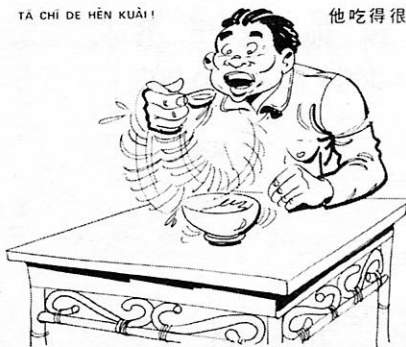
14 – Well, how do you know his French is good then?  
*then... you how know his French good ne?*

15 – I heard people say so!  
*I shì hear people speak de!*

他吃得很快!

TÀ CHÍ DE HÉN KUÀI!

他吃得很快!



⑪ Note the construction shì... de (lesson 22, note 5), to emphasize an element of the sentence. Here, "by listening, I heard people say so". wǒ shì xué zhōngwén de, *I am learning Chinese*; wǒ shì zài Shànghǎi zhǎngdà de, *me, I grew up in Shanghai*. rénjiā, *people*. Note, pronounced quickly, the final a is neutral tone. Do you remember dàjiā, *everyone*, and wǒ jiā, *my home*.

\*\*\*

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 我想他不是学生。  
Wǒ xiǎng tā bú shì xuésheng.
- ② 他们为什么学法文?  
Tāmen wèishénme xué fǎwén?
- ③ 怪不得他也想去!  
Guài-bu-dé tā yě xiǎng qù!

\*\*\*

完成句子  
Wánchéng jùzi

- ① She speaks very well.  
Tā shuō . . . hěn hǎo.
- ② They write very fast.  
Tāmen xiě . . . hěn kuài.
- ③ Does he study well?  
Tā xué . . . hǎo-bù-hǎo?
- ④ He doesn't study well.  
Tā xué . . . bù hǎo.

- ④ 他说得很清楚。  
Tā shuō de hěn qīngchū.
- ⑤ 他吃得很快。  
Tā chī de tài kuài.

## Exercise 1

- ① I don't think he is a student. ② Why are they learning French?  
③ No wonder he wants to go too! ④ He speaks very clearly. ⑤ He eats too quickly.

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

- ① - de - ② - de - ③ - de - ④ - de - .

*The most important feature of today's lesson is of course the particle 得 de which introduces an adverb of manner, level or degree. You will encounter many other examples of its use. For the moment listen carefully to the dialogue and/or read the dialogue several times. Read the notes carefully, then reread them. Then do the exercises. It's all there, it's all said. The examples given later will then help you become familiar with the use of this particle. The acquisition of 得 de is one of the fundamental steps in your progress; once you have passed this hurdle, one of the main difficulties of Chinese will have been surmounted. So don't hesitate to review this lesson, and to come back to it several times.*

## REVISION AND NOTES

### Read the notes again

22nd lesson: ②, ③, ⑨ - 23rd: ⑦, ⑩ - 24th: ②, ③, ⑧ - 25th ①, ⑦ - 26th: ②, ④, ⑧, ⑨ - 27th: ②, ⑧.

### 1 Pronunciation

It can never be superfluous to remind you to be careful about the **tones**. You have been informed of some of the misunderstandings that can arise if you don't pronounce the right tone. This is the most difficult part of learning Chinese. The **first tone** must always be pronounced "flat", in the same register (high). The **second tone** ascends towards the high register. The **third tone** goes down and then up again, and the **fourth tone** descends rapidly from a high register to a low register. Take another look at the introduction in phonetics at the beginning of the book and then read the following sounds out loud:

dāi dāi dāi dāi

fān fān fān fān

cāi cāi cāi cāi

shī shī shī shī

chī chí chǐ chì

(these sounds are each read once in the recording).

**2** Now you are at the end of your **fourth week** of study; one month has gone by! We hope you have got through the first twenty-eight lessons without too much difficulty. Remember this method is called Chinese "with ease". You don't have to learn everything by

heart, but make sure you **read** and **understand** everything, taking time to go back over anything that seems complicated. Practice makes perfect! 好不好? hǎo-bù-hǎo? *don't you agree?*

### 3 以前 yǐqián 以后 yǐhòu 现在 xiànzài

There are no conjugations in Chinese because the characters are **invariable**. This is why **adverbs** are so important. It is the **adverb** that helps to express the tense of an action. 了 *le* the suffix expressing a completed action, is also very important. Judge for yourself: 他很好 tā hěn hǎo, *he is very well*; 他以前很好 tā yǐqián hěn hǎo, *he used to be very well before*; 我看我的朋友 wǒ kàn wǒ-de péngyou, *I see my friend*; 我看了我的朋友 wǒ kàn le wǒ-de péngyou, *I saw my friend*. 以前 yǐqián indicates the past (translated into English with the simple past or with "used to"). For the future, a word such as "tomorrow", "later", "next year" is sufficient to indicate the future. Often, however, a verb such as 会 *huì* (which in certain cases indicates the possibility or probability that an action will take place, and is, therefore, a mark of the future), or the verb 要 *yào*, also an element indicating the future, is used to show that an action will (or will not) take place.

**4** 快...了 *kuài... le* or 快要...了 *kuài yào... le* two constructions to indicate the immediate future. 快要吃饭了 *kuài yào chī fàn le*, *we can soon start to eat!* Note that in Chinese, when the context is clear, the subject is omitted: 明白不明白 *míng bai-bù-míng bai?* *do you understand?* 去不去? *qù-bù-qù?* *shall we go?* 冷不冷? *lěng-bù-lěng?* *are you cold?* **or** *is it cold?* In all these cases the context provides the exact sense of what the speaker is saying.

5 ...是...的 ... shì... de is a construction to emphasize an element of a sentence. 是 shì precedes this element. 的 de is always at the end of the sentence: 我是学法语的 wǒ shì xué fǎyǔ de, I study French / it's French that I'm studying; 你是学什么的? nǐ shì xué shénme de? what do you study? 他是昨天来的 tā shì zuótiān lái de, it was yesterday that he arrived; 我是不能去的 wǒ shì bù néng qù de, I really can't go.

6 才 cái This adverb, introduced in the exercise in the 23rd lesson, and often translated "only, now, not until..." indicates a **restriction** on the subject, or on the date when the action took place (or will take place). Often expressing regret: in the past 才 cái indicates that it would have been better if the action had taken place sooner; it is regrettable that it took place so late. In the future, it is regrettable that the action cannot take place sooner. So: 他昨天才来呢 tā zuótiān cái lái ne, he didn't arrive until yesterday! 我是昨天才告诉他的! wǒ shì zuótiān cái gàosu tā de! I only told him yesterday! Or: 我礼拜天才能去! wǒ lǐbài tiān cái néng qù! I can't go before (next) Sunday! 他下个月才能到! tā xià-ge yuè cái néng dào! he can only get there next month!

7 用 yòng 跟 gēn 在 zài These prepositions introduce an adverbial clause which always comes **before the action**. Try to get into the habit of always putting the verb at the end of the clause: 他跟我一起去 tā gēn wǒ qù, he's going with me; 你跟谁去? nǐ gēn shéi qù? who are you going with? 她用筷子吃饭 tā yòng kuàizi chī fàn, she eats with chopsticks; 我用毛笔写汉字 wǒ yòng máobǐ xiě hànzi, I write Chinese characters with a brush. Of course you cannot translate these sentences properly word-for-word [he / with I / to go], [you /

with who / to go?] [she / with chopsticks / to eat], etc. In the same way, place always comes before action: 他在法国学法语 tā zài Fǎguó xué fǎyǔ, he's studying French in France; [he / in France / to study / French]; 我们在饭馆儿吃饭 wǒmen zài fànguǎnr chī-fàn, we eat in a restaurant; [we / in a restaurant / to eat]; 他们在这儿做什么? tāmen zài zhèr zuò shénme? what are they doing here? [they / here / to do / what?]. Of course, as with any grammar, there will be a few exceptions! But for now, and in general, it is always: the verb (the action) **at the end of the sentence**, and the adverbial clause **in front** of the verb.

8 去 qù, to go; 路 lù, road, way. Be careful! the letter u is only pronounced like a French "u" after j, q or x (and of course y). With all the other consonants u is pronounced "oo" (as in loop).

### 9 到 dào

This preposition (to, towards) indicates destination. The destination is, of course, expressed **before the verb**: 他到那儿去 tā dào nàr qù, he's going there; 你到哪儿去? nǐ dào nàr qù? where are you going? In certain sentences where there is no other verb 到 dào, is verbal, and means "to arrive (at one's destination)" 他到了吗? tā dào le ma? has he arrived?

### 10 得 de

Remember! Manner, degree or the level achieved by an action is expressed using 得 de which **comes straight after the verb**, followed by the adverb describing the action: 他写得很好 tā xiě de hěn hǎo, he writes very well. **Do not confuse it with the nominalizing particle 的 de** (the characters for these two words are different) which is used, for example, to form the possessive 他的朋友 tā-de péngyou, his friend.

我是刚来的！

wǒ shì gāng lái de! *I just arrived!*

再见！再见！

zàijiàn! zàijiàn! *goodbye! goodbye!* (cf. lesson 25, note 9)

没关系！

méi guānxi! *never mind!*

好极了！

hǎo jí le! *perfect!*

我忘了！

wǒ wàng le! *I forgot!*

真的吗？

zhēnde ma? *is that true?*

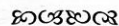
### 12 Write in Chinese (Second Wave)

Don't look at the Chinese before you do this exercise! If you make a mistake you can learn by correcting it. That's more useful!

- 1 He only arrived yesterday.
- 2 He has lots of friends in China.
- 3 It will soon be half past six!
- 4 He speaks too fast!
- 5 It doesn't matter! On Sunday, I can too!
- 6 Can you tell me?
- 7 Why is it so expensive?
- 8 Because it's very pretty!

- 1 a) 他昨天才来  
Tā zuótiān cái lái or  
b) 他是昨天才来的。  
Tā shì zuótiān cái lái de.
- 2 他在中国有很多朋友。  
Tā zài Zhōngguó yǒu hěn duō péngyou.
- 3 快六点半了！  
Kuài liù diǎn bàn le!
- 4 他说得太快！  
Tā shuō de tài kuài!
- 5 没关系！我星期天也可以！  
Méi guānxi! wǒ lǐbài tiān yě kěyǐ!
- 6 你能不能告诉我？  
Nǐ néng-bù-néng gào su wǒ?
- 7 为什么那么贵？  
Wèishénme nàme guì?
- 8 因为很漂亮！  
Yīnwèi hěn piàoliang!

When you listen to the recording, if you hear a word that you have forgotten (or if you have forgotten how it is written), consult the **INDEX** at the end of the book. It contains all the words introduced during the first seven weeks, in pinyin transcription and in alphabetical order with the corresponding Chinese characters and the most frequent translation. The number of the lesson where the word was introduced and explained is also included.



29 第二十九课  
Dì èr-shí-jiǔ kè

在旅馆  
Zài lǚguǎn

- 1- 这个旅馆很不错!  
Zhèi-ge lǚguǎn hěn bú cuò! ①
- 2- 对! 不错! 可是好象没有热水!  
Dui! Bú cuò! Kěshì hǎoxiàng méi yǒu rè shuǐ! ②
- 3- 你说什么?  
Nǐ shuō shénme?
- 4- 我说好象没有热水!  
Wǒ shuō hǎoxiàng méi yǒu rè shuǐ!
- 5- 不可能吧!  
Bù kěnéng ba! ③
- 6- 你自己去看吧! ...  
Nǐ zìjǐ qù kàn ba! ... ④
- 7- 对! 奇怪!  
Dui! Qíguài!

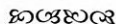
Notes

- ① lǚguǎn, hotel. The word fāndiàn, is also used as in Běijīng Fāndiàn, *The Beijing Hotel*. bú-cuò, not bad! hěn bú-cuò, really not bad! very good! The negative bù, before a fourth tone syllable takes a **second tone** (bú).

Twenty-ninth Lesson 29

At the Hotel  
at hotel

- 1 - This hotel is really not bad!  
*this class. hotel very neg. bad!*
- 2 - Right! But there seems to be no hot water!  
*correct! neg. bad! but seems neg. have hot water!*
- 3 - What did you say?  
*you say what?*
- 4 - I said there seems to be no hot water!  
*I say seem neg. have hot water!*
- 5 - That's impossible, surely!  
*neg. possible suggestion!*
- 6 - Go and look for yourself!  
*you oneself go see suggestion! ...*
- 7 - It's true! How odd!  
*correct! strange!*



- ② hǎoxiàng, *it seems (that)* but no need to translate "that"! (lesson 7, note 2). hǎoxiàng méi yǒu rén, *it seems that there's no-one there*; hǎoxiàng bú-cuò! *it seems not bad at all!* hǎoxiàng méi yǒu le! *it seems that there is none left!* rè shuǐ, *hot water*. Adjective before the noun, as always. Zhōngguó fàn, *Chinese food*; Fǎguó chē, *a French car*, etc.
- ③ kěnéng, *possible, probable, may be...*; bù kěnéng, *not possible, impossible*. kěnéng chū-le shì! *perhaps something has happened!* kěnéng míngtiān qù, *maybe we'll go tomorrow*.
- ④ zìjǐ, *self*. zhèi-ge, shì wǒ zìjǐ zuò de! *I made it myself!* shì tā zìjǐ xiě de, *he wrote it himself!* nǐ zìjǐ zuò ba! *do it yourself!* zìjǐ is placed just **after the subject**; here, a personal pronoun.

29 8- 你去打听一下为什么没有热水!

Nǐ qù dǎtīng yí xià wèishénme méi yǒu rè shuǐ!

9- 我刚才问了!

Wǒ gāng cái wèn le! ⑤

10- 他们说什么?

Tāmen shuō shénme?

11- 他们说这个旅馆是新开的!

Tāmen shuō zhèi-ge lǚguǎn shì xīn kāi de! ⑥

12- 热水呢?

Rè shuǐ ne?

13- 热水, 他们说今天晚上可能会有!

Rè shuǐ, tāmen shuō jīntiān wǎnshàng kěnéng huì yǒu! ⑦⑧

14- 好! 那就等吧!

Hǎo! Nà jiù děng ba! □

### Notes

- ⑤ gāngcái, synonymous with gāng, comes just after the verb to express an action which has just taken place. tā gāngcái wèn-le! *he only asked a minute ago!* gāngcái lái-le liǎng-ge rén, *two people arrived a minute ago;* tā gāngcái zòu-le, *he left a minute ago / he's just left.*

8- You go and find out why there isn't any!

*you go inquire a little why neg. have hot water!*

9- But I've just asked!

*I just ask le!*

10- What did they say?

*they say what?*

11- They say this hotel has only just opened!

*they say this class. hotel shì new open de!*

12- And about the hot water?

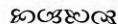
*hot water ne?*

13- As for the hot water, they say that there may be some this evening!

*hot water; they say today evening possible likely have!*

14- OK! We'll just wait then!

*good! so then wait suggestion!*



- ⑥ You have already met the verb kāi in the sense of *to drive* (a car) (lesson 15), or *to start, to leave* (lesson 16). kāi also means *to open* (to open a tin / to open a restaurant, a hotel, etc.) wǒ bú huì kāi-chē, *I don't know how to drive;* huōchē kāi le! *the train is leaving!* here you have the expression xīn kāi de [newly open / recently opened]. xīn... de is a construction with a verb between xīn and de, used to express an action **which has recently taken place** (xīn means *new, newly*). xīn mǎi de, *I've just bought it! it's new!* xīn lái de xuésheng, *a student who has just arrived;* xīn kāi de fànguǎnr, *a newly opened restaurant;* here the verbal element qualifying the noun comes at the beginning of the sentence, and the nominalizing particle de establishes the relationship between the two other elements. You will meet many other examples of this construction.

⑦ jīntiān means *today* (cf. lesson 17); jīntiān wǎnshàng, *this evening* is [today / evening]. jīntiān zǎoshàng, *this morning;* jīntiān xiàwǔ, *this afternoon.*

⑧ kěnéng, *possible;* huì means *it is likely that, it may be that.* Although you have met this verb in the sense "to know how to", "to know how (to speak a language)", "to be able", here it has the meaning *likely, probably.*



## 练习

Liànxí

- ① 这个商店很不错!  
Zhèi-ge shāngdiàn hěn bú cuò!
- ② 他好象没有时间。  
Tā hǎoxiàng méi yǒu shíjiān.
- ③ 我刚才去了!  
Wǒ gāngcái qù le!
- ④ 你去打听打听吧!  
Nǐ qù dǎtīng dǎtīng ba!
- ⑤ 好! 那就走吧!  
Hǎo! Nà jiù zǒu ba!

\*\*\*

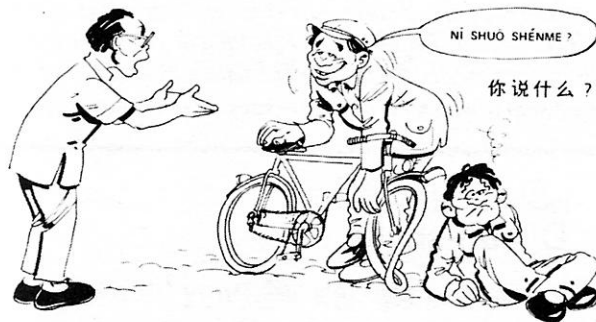
## 完成句子

Wánchéng jùzi

- ① He doesn't seem to have arrived.  
Tā ..... méi yǒu lái.
- ② He will come this evening for sure.  
Tā ..... kěndìng huì lái.
- ③ And your friend?  
Nǐ de péngyou .. ?
- ④ I'm sorry, I haven't got time!  
... .., wǒ méi yǒu shíjiān!

## Exercise 1

① This shop is really not bad! ② It seems he hasn't got time. ③ I've just been! ④ You go and find out! ⑤ Good! Let's go then!



\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

① - hǎoxiàng - ② - wǎnshàng - ③ - ne ④ duì bu qǐ -

Remember that the sounds "oo" (as in "food") and "u" as in the French "rue" are both transcribed into pinyin with the letter u, but that when the "u" bears an umlaut lü is pronounced as in the French past participle for the verb "to read", "lu", and lu is pronounced "loo". However the umlaut is not necessary after j, q or x because these consonants are never followed by an "oo" sound.

Be careful when pronouncing the word 自己 zìjǐ! After z, c, s, zh, ch, sh, and r the letter i is not enunciated. It is merely the representation of a “non-vowel” or “silent e”. So 自己 zìjǐ is in fact pronounced “dzetjee”. You must now have realized how important the nominalizer 的 de can be. Also it is pronounced the same as 得 de used to introduce adverbs of manner, degree or level. The two particles are written with two different characters but “sound” exactly the same. Their position in a sentence differs, but they are transcribed with the same letters. You will gradually become familiar with their respective uses. In a few words 的 de

### 30 第三十课

#### Dì sān-shí kè

喝水吗?  
Hē shuǐ ma?

- 1- 喝水吗?  
Hē shuǐ ma? ①
- 2- 谢谢你! 我不渴!  
Xièxie nǐ! Wǒ bù kě! ②
- 3- 你喝一点儿吧!  
Nǐ hē yìdiǎnr ba! ③

#### Notes

- ① When the context is clear, remember, no need for personal pronouns! shuǐ means *water* (rè shuǐ, *hot water*); however in this expression, the word means any drink that you might offer someone, like kāi-shuǐ, *boiling water*, lěng-kāi-shuǐ, *cold boiled water*, chá, *tea*; lǜ chá, *green tea*, or hóng chá, *black tea* called “red tea” in China (from the color of the drink rather than the color of the leaf), etc.

links a noun to whatever qualifies it (adjective, relative clause, etc). 得 de is used to form certain adverbs and always follows the verb. As promised, you will become familiar with these particles by using them in context. So, no problem. If a point seems obscure, refer, as mentioned earlier: go several lessons ahead, and mark the number of the page that is causing you concern. Continue your study as usual. When you reach the page in question, you will probably find that the difficulty no longer exists, as it will have been used again in the exercises and explained more fully. Otherwise, refer again!

### Thirtieth Lesson 30

#### Would you Like a Drink of Water?

*drink water interr.?*

- 1- Would you like a drink?  
*drink water interr.?*
- 2- No, thank you. I'm not thirsty.  
*thank you you! I neg. thirsty!*
- 3- Go on, have something to drink!  
*you drink a little suggestion!*



- ② xièxie! *thank you!* can be followed by the person to be thanked: xièxie nǐ! *thanks to you / I thank you / we thank you*; xièxie Lǎo Zhāng! *thank you to Zhang; thanks Zhang!* kě, *to be thirsty*. To be very thirsty is hěn kě; bù kě, *not to be thirsty*; bù hěn kě, *not to be very thirsty*. Never use shì, *to be*, which is not necessary here.
- ③ yìdiǎnr (pronounced “eedee’er”) placed after verbs, means *a little*: mǎi yìdiǎnr ba! *buy a little!* nǐ chī yìdiǎnr ba! *go on! eat a little!* ..; here, ba is the sentence-final particle used to express the imperative, an invitation or a suggestion.

- 4- 好! ... 你有茶吗?  
Hǎo! ... Nǐ yǒu chá ma?
- 5- 当然有! ... 要什么茶?  
Dāngrán yǒu! ... yào shénme chá?
- 6- 红茶, 有没有?  
Hóng chá, yǒu méi yǒu? ④
- 7- 有!  
Yǒu!
- 8- 那就喝红茶吧! ...  
Nà jiù hē hóng chá ba! ... ⑤
- 9- 你最近忙不忙?  
Nǐ zuìjìn máng-bù-máng? ⑥
- 10- 还可以!  
Hái kěyǐ! ⑦

## Notes

- ④ In certain sentences, the complement is placed at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis: chá, nǐ yǒu ma? *tea; have you got any?* Zhōngguó, wǒ hái méi qù-guo! *China; I've never been there!* zhōngguó-fàn, wǒ zuò de bú-cuò! *Chinese food; I cook it pretty well!*
- ⑤ nà jiù... means *well then...* and is followed by the part of the sentence receiving the emphasis: nà jiù míngtiān qù! *well then, it's tomorrow that we go!* nà jiù mǎi liǎng-ge ba! *well then, do buy two of them! ...*
- ⑥ zuìjìn, *these last few days, recently...* máng-bù-máng? *are you very busy? have you got lots to do?* etc.
- ⑦ "Well it's OK!", "I'm managing!", "I can still take it!"; word-for-word: [(it's) still possible].

- 4- Very well. Have you got tea?  
*good! ... you have tea interr.?*
- 5- Of course I have! What sort of tea do you want?  
*of course have! ... want what tea?*
- 6- Have you got black tea?  
*red tea, have neg. have?*
- 7- Yes!  
*have!*
- 8- Well then, I'll have some black tea!  
*so then drink red tea suggestion! ...*
- 9- Have you been busy recently?  
*you recently busy neg. busy?*
- 10- Alright!  
*still possible!*

☞☞☞☞☞☞☞☞☞☞



30 11 - 你爱人呢? 她怎么样?

Nǐ àiren ne? Tā zěnmē yàng? ⑧⑨

12 - 还没下班儿!

Hái méi xià bānr! ⑩⑪

13 - 你孩子怎么样?

Nǐ hái zi zěnmē yàng?

14 - 他明天回来。后天是他三十五岁生日!

Tā míngtiān huí lai. Hòutiān shì tā sānshí-wǔ suì shēng rì! ⑫

15 - 哦! 真的吗? 日子过得真快呀!

O? Zhēnde ma? Rìzi guò de zhēn kuài ya! ⑬ □

### Notes

⑧ àiren means *wife*. It is a synonym for qīzi. You will also hear tàitài, wǒ tàitài, wǒ-de tàitài, *my wife*. lǎopo is a slang expression.

zhàngfu means *husband*, it's a synonym for xiānsheng. You will sometimes also hear the colloquial expression: lǎogōng, wǒ-de lǎogōng, *my husband*.

⑨ zěnmē yàng? is a very useful interrogative expression, a sort of "multiple use" expression for conversation. It means *how are you? how is ...? how is it going? how does it look? well then? what's new?* etc.

⑩ méi is a contraction of the **negative for the completed action** méi yǒu (followed by the verb): wǒ méi qù, *I didn't go*; tā wèishénme méi shuō ne? *why didn't he say anything?* wǒ hái méi chī ne! *I haven't eaten yet!* etc. In these negative sentences, hái, always comes before the negative, **before the verb group**.

11 - And your wife, how is she doing?  
*you wife ne? she how aspect?*

12 - She still hasn't left work.  
*still neg. down work!*

13 - How is your son getting on?  
*you child how aspect?*

14 - He's coming home tomorrow. The day after tomorrow is his thirty-fifth birthday!  
*he tomorrow return. day after tomorrow be he three-ten-five year birth day!*

15 - Oh, really? Doesn't time fly?  
*oh? really de interr.? day pass de really fast then!*



⑪ xià-bānr (pronounced "hseaa ba'er") means *to leave the office, to finish the day's work, to go home after work. To go to work, to start work is shàng-bānr. bān is the word meaning the team, the group one works with. With the Beijing pronunciation, there is a final "r".*

⑫ hòutiān, *the day after tomorrow. shēng rì, birthday. Years of age are expressed with the word suì pronounced "sooay" (see lesson 20): sān-shí suì, thirty years old; hái zi shí suì le! (my) son/daughter (is) ten; tā yǐ jǐng wǔ-shí suì le! he (is) fifty already!* this is another instance where the verb yǒu, *to be* is not necessary! Simple **juxtaposition** of the subject (the person) and the age. **That's all. wǒ sì-shí-qī, I (am) forty-seven.**

⑬ guò is the verb *to pass, to go by, to cross over. guò hé, to cross the river; guò mǎlù, to cross the street; rìzi guò de hěn kuài, the days, time goes by so fast. Always remember the particle de between the verb and the manner adverb. guò de tài kuài, it's going by too fast; rìzi guò de hěn hǎo, it's going very well / the days pass very pleasantly, etc.*

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 你要不要喝水?  
Nǐ yào-bú-yào hē shuǐ?
- ② 你渴不渴?  
Nǐ kě-bù-kě?

\*\*\*

## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

- ① I'm not thirsty, thank you!  
Wǒ bù . . . , xièxie!
- ② Have something to drink!  
Nǐ hē . . . . . ba!
- ③ Is your husband busy?  
Nǐ zhàngfu . . . -bù- . . . ?
- ④ She has already left!  
Tā . . . . . zǒu le!

Be careful of the pronunciation of 最近 *zuìjìn*, recently. Do not confuse with 已经 *yǐjīng*, already. The second syllable of *yǐjīng* is nasal. Without insisting on the "g"! Listen carefully to the recordings!

- ③ 我最近很忙。  
Wǒ zuì jìn hěn máng.
- ④ 你的丈夫好吗?  
Nǐ-de zhàngfu hǎo ma?

## Exercise 1

① Would you like a drink (of water)? ② Are you thirsty? ③ I've been very busy recently. ④ How is your husband?

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

① - kě - ② - yidiǎnr - ③ - máng - máng ④ - yǐjīng -

Remember: The possession (the genitive case) is expressed using the nominalizer 的 *de* placed between the object and the possessor. However, for kinship ties, it is not absolutely necessary to use this particle. So, to say my wife it is simply 我爱人 *wǒ àiren*, 我的爱人 *wǒ-de àiren*, 我妻子 *wǒ qīzi*, 我的妻子 *wǒ-de qīzi*, 我夫人 *wǒ fūren*, 我的夫人 *wǒ-de fūren*, 我老婆 *wǒ lǎopo*, 我的老婆 *wǒ-de lǎopo*, 我太太 *wǒ tàitai*, 我的太太 *wǒ-de tàitai*. To say my husband: 我丈夫 *wǒ zhàngfu*, but you can also say 我的爱人 *wǒ-de àiren*, or 我的丈夫 *wǒ-de zhàngfu*. 爱人 *àiren* can be masculine or feminine. 丈夫 *zhàngfu* only means husband.

The term 孩子 *háizi*, child is used in the text. Without further precision it is not possible to say whether the child is male or female. But the speakers know, so it is not necessary for them to give the detail by saying: 男孩子 *nán háizi*, son, 女孩子 *nǚ háizi*, daughter.

31 第三十一课  
Dì sān-shí-yī kè

打牌  
Dǎ-pái

- 1- 我该走了!  
Wǒ gāi zǒu le!
- 2- 为什么? 还有时间呢!  
Wèishénme? Hái yǒu shíjiān ne!
- 3- 你看! 快十点半了!  
Nǐ kàn! Kuài shí diǎn bàn le! ①
- 4- 哦? 那么晚了!  
ó? Nàme wǎn le!
- 5- 时间过得很快!  
Shíjiān guò de hěn kuài! ②
- 6- 就是! ... 打桥牌很有意思!  
Jiù shì! ... Dǎ qiáo pái hěn yǒu yìsi! ③④

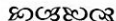
Notes

- ① kuài... le! indicates an action that is about to take place, an event that is **about to happen**: wǒ kuài bìyè le, *I'm graduating soon*; kuài xià-yǔ le, *it's going to start raining*; kuài liù-diǎn-bàn le! *it will soon be half past six!*  
Time is expressed using diǎn: liǎng-diǎn-bàn, *half past two*. kuài shí-diǎn le, *it will soon be ten o'clock*. sān diǎn, *three o'clock*. But for a **length of time**, xiǎoshi is used; wǒ děng-le sān-ge xiǎoshi, *I waited for three hours*; hái yǒu liǎng-ge xiǎoshi, *there are still another two more hours*.

Thirty-first Lesson 31

Playing Cards  
*hit tablet*

- 1- I must go!  
*I must go le!*
- 2- Why? We've still got time!  
*why? still have time ne!*
- 3- Look! It's nearly ten o'clock!  
*you see! fast ten o'clock half le!*
- 4- Eh? Is it that late?  
*oh? so late le!*
- 5- Time flies!  
*time pass de very fast!*
- 6- Exactly! Bridge is a very interesting game.  
*then be! ... play bridge card have meaning!*



- ② “Time goes by so fast”: **manner adverb** clause. You **must always** place the **particle** de immediately after the verb. tā chī de tài duō, *he eats too much* (“too much / a lot”); tā shuō de tài kuài, *she speaks too fast*; rìzi guò de hěn kuài, *the days go by so fast*.
- ③ jiù shì! (“it’s just that!”): *absolutely! that’s true! indeed*, etc. You will meet other expressions with the same meaning, like shì! or shì a! (cf. item 11)
- ④ dǎ-pái means *to play cards*, and also *to play mahjong*. Here it is a card game referred to by the generic term pūkè-pái, which applies to all sorts of games as well as **poker**. In the dialogue, the game in question is **bridge**, its name in Chinese is... “bridge”.

- 7- 是! ... .. 你打得不错!  
Shì! ... .. Nǐ dǎ de bú cuò!
- 8- 不! 我打得不好!  
Bù! Wǒ dǎ de bù hǎo!
- 9- 你的妹妹为什么不打?  
Nǐ de mèimei wèishénme bù dǎ?
- 10- 她不喜欢打牌。  
Tā bù xǐhuan dǎ-pái.
- 11- 是啊, 有人不喜欢打。  
Shì a, yǒu rén bù xǐhuan dǎ. ⑤
- 12- 好了! 好了! 该走了!  
Hǎo le! Hǎo le! Gāi zǒu le!
- 13- 再见吧!  
Zàijiàn ba! ⑥
- 14- 再见!  
Zàijiàn!

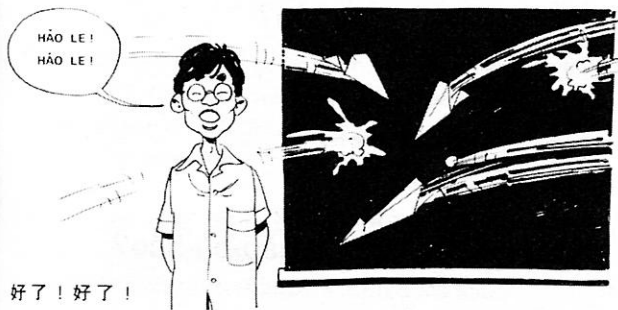
## Notes

- ⑤ "There are people who...", **the relative pronoun is not possible!** *yǒu rén bù xǐhuan*, *there are people [who] don't like it / some people don't like that*; *yǒu rén lái*, *someone's coming*; *yǒu rén shuō...*, *there are people who say that... / some people say that...*
- ⑥ *zàijiàn* means *goodbye!* and *hello!* is *nǐ hǎo!*

\*\*\*

- 7- Yes, it is. Your game isn't bad!  
*be! ... .. you play de neg. bad!*
- 8- Oh, no! I don't play well!  
*neg.! I play de neg. good!*
- 9- Why doesn't your younger sister play?  
*your younger sister why neg. play?*
- 10- She doesn't like playing cards!  
*she neg. like play cards.*
- 11- Oh yes, there are people who don't like playing cards!  
*be exclam.! have people neg. like play.*
- 12- Well then, I must be going!  
*good le! good le! must go le!*
- 13- See you then!  
*again see suggestion!*
- 14- Goodbye!  
*again see!*

好了! 好了!



\*\*\*

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 我们还有时间吗?  
Wǒmen hái yǒu shíjiān ma?
- ② 快三点半了!  
Kuài sān diǎn bàn le!
- ③ 他们为什么不来?  
Tāmen wèishénme bù lái?

\*\*\*

## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

- ① Does he study well?  
Tā xué .. hǎo-bù-hǎo?
- ② You must tell me!  
Nǐ yīnggāi ..... wǒ!
- ③ He speaks quite well (not bad)!  
Tā shuō .. bú cuò!
- ④ Does your little sister write well?  
Nǐ de mèimei xiě .. hǎo-bù-hǎo?

- ④ 他说得很快。  
Tā shuō de hěn kuài.

## Exercise 1

① Have we still got time? ② It's nearly half past three! ③ Why don't they come? ④ He talks very fast.

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

① - de - ② - gāosu - ③ - de - ④ - de -

We have already met 那么好 nàme hǎo, so well / as well as that, in Lesson 27. Here we have 那么晚 nàme wǎn, so late / as late as that. All you need is the adverb 那么 nàme, so... just in front of the verbal adjective.

The expression 有意思 yǒu yìsi means it's interesting, or it's fun, according to the context. You will also hear 很有意思 hěn yǒu yìsi, it's very interesting, it's really good fun.

好了! 好了! hǎo le! hǎo le! that's it! OK, that's enough! is an idiomatic expression which is often used to end a conversation or to show that a change in situation is required (departure, changing the subject of conversation, etc.).



32 第三十二课  
Dì sān-shí-èr kè

在什么地方?  
Zài shénme dìfang?

- 1- 重庆在什么地方?  
Chóngqīng zài shénme dìfang? ①
- 2- 我想是在四川。  
Wǒ xiǎng shì zài Sìchuān. ②
- 3- 啊! 对了!  
à! Dui le! ③
- 4- 你为什么问我这个?  
Nǐ wèishénme wèn wǒ zhèi-ge?

Notes

- ① Chóngqīng is in the province of Sìchuān. zài shénme dìfang? where? in what location? Same meaning as zài nǎr? The **province** of Sichuan is Sìchuān or Sìchuān shěng (shěng = province).
- ② "I think that": just omit "that" when translating the expression into Chinese. When it is followed by a verb, or a verbal adjective, xiǎng (or hěn xiǎng) means to want to (or to wish to). wǒ hěn xiǎng qù, I really want to go. Followed by a complete sentence (subject + verbal), or by a verbal adjective, xiǎng means to think that. wǒ xiǎng hěn hǎo, I think it's very good. wǒ xiǎng míngtiān yě kěyǐ, I think it would be possible tomorrow. wǒ xiǎng tā bú shì zhōngguó-rén, I don't think he's Chinese.
- ③ duì le! that's right, that's true, I'd forgotten! oh yes, that's right!

Thirty-second Lesson 32

Where Is It?  
at what place?

- 1- Where is Chongqing?  
Chongqing at what place?
- 2- I think it's in Sichuan.  
I think be at Sichuan.
- 3- Oh yes, that's right!  
exclam.! correct le!
- 4- Why are you asking me that?  
you why ask I this class.?



- 5- 因为我打算明年到中国去。  
Yīnwèi wǒ dǎsuàn míngnián dào  
Zhōngguó qù. ④
- 6- 真的吗？去做生意吗？  
Zhēnde ma? Qù zuò shēngyì ma?
- 7- 是！我觉得做买卖很有意思  
Shì! Wǒ juéde zuò mǎimài hěn yǒu yìsi ⑤
- 8- 这一次你想买什么？  
Zhèi yí cì nǐ xiǎng mǎi shénme? ⑥
- 9- 我不是去买东西，这一次  
我去开工厂  
Wǒ bú shì qù mǎi dōngxì, zhèi yí cì wǒ  
qù kāi gōngchǎng ⑦
- 10- 哦！... 开工厂！... ... 真想  
不到！  
O! ... Kāi gōngchǎng! ... ... Zhēn xiǎng  
bú dào! ⑧

## Notes

- ④ míngnián, next year. jīnnián, this year. qùnián, last year.  
To go to China: [towards / China / to go]. From now on try to  
memorize the more common constructions. wǒ dào Shànghǎi  
qù, I'm going to Shanghai; nǐ dào nǎr qù? where are you  
going? wǒ dào Sīchuan qù, I'm going to Sichuan.
- ⑤ To find that, to think that, to feel...: juéde... No need to think  
about "that" when translating into Chinese! nǐ juéde hǎo ma?  
do you think (that) it's OK, (that) it's good? nǐ juéde zěn-▶

- 5- Because I plan to go to China next year.  
because I count next year to China go.
- 6- Really? Are you going on business?  
really de interr. go make trade interr.?
- 7- Yes, I am. I think business is very interesting!  
be! I feel make business very have meaning!
- 8- What are you thinking of buying this time?  
this one time you think buy what?
- 9- I'm not going to buy anything, I'm going to start  
a factory!  
I neg. be go buy things, this one time I go open work!
- 10- Oh! ... to open a factory! ... I would never have  
guessed!  
oh! ... open factory! ... ... really think neg. arrive!

ཅོལ་ཅོལ་ཅོལ་

- ▶ méiyàng? how do you find it? what do you think of it? wǒ  
juéde hěn guì, I find it very expensive. tā juéde tài guì, he  
finds it too expensive. Practice hard on your pronunciation of  
juéde.
- ⑥ This time, [this / time]. On these two occasions: zhèi liǎng cì.  
Compare: zhèi liǎng-ge rén, these two people; zhèi yí-ge rén  
or zhèi-ge rén, this person. "Time" is a word that **does not**  
**take a classifier**. It is the same for tiān, day and nián, year.  
zhèi liǎng tiān, these two days; zhèi liǎng nián, these two  
years.
- ⑦ mǎi dōngxì, to buy things, to do the shopping. dōngxì means  
thing. The character dōng means east, the orient, and xī means  
the west. However in dōngxì, the second syllable is neutral  
tone.
- ⑧ xiǎng-bú-dào! it is unthinkable / incredible! (Word-for-word:  
[think no arrive]).

- 11 - 可是地方还没有定好呢!  
Kěshì dìfāng hái méi yǒu dìng hǎo ne! ⑨
- 12 - 我看上海不错! 在上海开  
吧!  
Wǒ kàn Shànghǎi bú cuò! Zài Shànghǎi  
kāi ba! ⑩
- 13 - 不! 我想在重庆开!  
Bù! Wǒ xiǎng zài Chóngqīng kāi! □

## Notes

- ⑨ *Not yet*, followed by a verb in the past, is translated using *hái méi yǒu*, followed by a verb. *wǒ hái méi yǒu chīfàn ne!* *I haven't eaten yet!* *tā hái méi yǒu lái, he hasn't arrived yet.* With this construction, the particle *ne* often comes at the end of ▶

\*\*\*

## Exercises

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 你的丈夫在什么地方?  
Nǐ-de zhàngfu zài shénme dìfāng?
- ② 他明年到上海去!  
Tā míngnián dào Shànghai qù!
- ③ 这一次你来我家, 好不好?  
Zhè yí cì nǐ lái wǒ jiā, hǎo-bù-hǎo?

- 11 - But the location is still not certain!  
*but place still neg. have fix good ne!*
- 12 - I think Shanghai is not bad! You should set up in  
Shanghai!  
*I see Shanghai neg. bad! at Shanghai open suggestion!*
- 13 - No! I think I'll set up in Chongqing!  
*neg.! I think at Chongqing open!*

㊦㊦㊦

- ▶ the sentence to mark the progressive aspect of a situation over a length of time. *dìng-hǎo*, *decided; settled; reserved.*
- ⑩ *wǒ kàn*, *in my opinion, as far as I can see, from my point of view...*

\*\*\*

- ④ 他们还没有回来。  
Tāmen hái méi yǒu huí lai.

## Exercise 1

- ① Where is your husband? ② He is going to Shanghai next year.  
③ This time you come to my house, OK? ④ They haven't come back yet.

## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

- ① Where do you live?  
Nǐ zhù-zài shénme . . . . . ?
- ② Is commerce interesting?  
Zuò mǎimai yǒu . . . . ma?
- ③ Where are you counting on going next year?  
Nǐ míngnián . . . . . dào nǎr qù?
- ④ Where are you thinking of going next year?  
Nǐ míngnián dǎsuàn . . . shénme dìfang . . . ?
- ⑤ Shanghai isn't in Sichuan.  
Shànghǎi . . . . Sìchuān shěng.

### 33 第三十三课

#### Dì sān-shí-sān kè

难不难?  
Nán-bù-nán?

- 1- 我听说你学中文!  
Wǒ tīng-shuō nǐ xué zhōngwén! ①

## Notes

- ① wǒ tīng-shuō..., *I heard that...*; sometimes this expression appears without wǒ: tīng-shuō hěn hǎo, *I heard (that) it's really good*; tīng-shuō hěn lěng, *I heard that it's really cold*;

## Exercise 2

① - dìfang ② - yìsi - ③ - dǎsuàn - ④ - dào - qù ⑤ - bú zài -.

*Be careful of the tone on —, one. When it is used on its own, or as part of a number, —, one is pronounced yī. But when it is followed by a first, second or third tone syllable, —, one is pronounced with a fourth tone: yì. When it comes before a fourth tone syllable it is pronounced with a second tone: yí. As in — 一次 yí cì, once. Or as in 一个人 yí ge rén, a man, a person (because originally 个 ge was a fourth tone syllable). However, “in a moment” is pronounced — 会儿 yì huìr.*

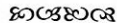
*Some of the simplest expressions are the most useful in everyday conversation. Do not hesitate to underline them in color. Then revision will be easy.*

### Thirty-third Lesson 33

#### Is it Difficult?

*difficult neg. difficult?*

- 1- I hear you are learning Chinese!  
*I hear say you learn Chinese!*



- ▶ tīng-shuō tā yào lái, *I heard that he was coming*. No need for the relative marker in Chinese!

- 2- 是! 上个月就开始了!  
Shì! Shàng-ge yuè jiù kāishǐ le! ②
- 3- 怎么样? 难不难?  
Zěnmē yàng? Nán-bù-nán?
- 4- 说话还可以, 写字比较难!  
Shuō huà hái kěyǐ, xiě zì bǐjiào nán! ③
- 5- 对! 汉字是不容易写!  
Duì! Hànzì shì bù róngyì xiě! ④
- 6- 要花很多时间!  
Yào huā hěn duō shíjiān!
- 7- 说话呢?  
Shuō huà ne?
- 8- 我有录音机! 很方便!  
Wǒ yǒu lùyīnjī! Hěn fāngbiān!
- 9- 你学广东话吗?  
Nǐ xué Guǎngdōng huà ma? ⑤
- 10- 不! 我学北京话!  
Bù! Wǒ xué Běijīng huà!

## Notes

- ② The verb “to be”, pronounced forcefully, is used here as an affirmative: *Yes! exactly, that is so.* shàng-ge yuè, *last month*; xià ge yuè, *next month*; zhèi-ge yuè, *this month*. jiù, *as soon as* (lesson 26, note 8). This adverb indicates that an action is taking place early, or took place **earlier than expected**; it is placed **just before the verb**, to emphasize the date: wǒ zuótiān jiù kāishǐ le, *I already started yesterday*; tā jīntiān jiù zǒu, *he's leaving today*; wǒ míngtiān jiù kāishǐ, *I begin tomorrow*.

- 2- Yes! I started last month!  
*be! last month then start le!*
- 3- What's it like? Is it difficult?  
*what aspect? difficult neg. difficult?*
- 4- Speaking is alright, but the writing is rather difficult!  
*speak word still can, write characters comparatively difficult!*
- 5- That's true! Chinese characters are not easy to write!  
*correct! Chinese characters be neg. easy write!*
- 6- You have to spend a lot of time!  
*need spend very much time!*
- 7- And for speaking?  
*speak word ne?*
- 8- I've got a tape recorder. It's very practical!  
*I have tape recorder. very convenient!*
- 9- Are you studying Cantonese?  
*you study Cantonese interr.?*
- 10- No, I'm learning Mandarin!  
*neg., I learn Mandarin!*



- ③ To speak is shuō-huà, word-for-word [to say / words]. An adjective can be inserted between the two elements, to say for example: shuō Zhōngguó-huà, *to speak Chinese*. In the same way, to write is xiě-zì [write / characters]. A qualifying element can be inserted: xiě Zhōngguó zì, *to write Chinese characters*. hànzi, *Chinese characters*.
- ④ The verb shì is used to confirm the previous sentence: *indeed, that's right, that's true.* róngyì, *easy, easy to...*
- ⑤ Guǎngdōng-huà, *Cantonese*, spoken in the province of Guangdong and in Hong Kong; it is written with the same **characters**. But the pronunciation is very different. The official language of China, now in general use, is based on the **Beijing dialect**. This is “*mandarin Chinese*”.

11 - 广东话和北京话的写法儿一样吗?

Guǎngdōng huà hé Běijīng huà de xiěfǎ yíyàng ma?

12 - 一样! 大家都用汉字!

Yíyàng! Dàjiā dōu yòng hànzi! ⑥

13 - 写一样, 可是说就不一样了!

Xiě yíyàng, kěshì shuō jiù bù yíyàng le!

14 - 现在大家都懂北京话!

Xiànzài dàjiā dōu dǒng Běijīng huà!

15 - 这样很方便!

Zhèi yàng hěn fāngbian! □

### Notes

- ⑥ yíyàng ma? *is this the same?* yíyàng-bù-yíyàng? *is this the same?* dàjiā dōu..., *everyone...* The adverb dōu is used to emphasize the **plural, completeness**. wǒmen dōu qù, *we are all going*. wǒmen dōu dǒng, *we understand everything*, or *we all understand*. yòng, which you met as a preposition in the sense of *with, by means of, by using...*, is a **verb** here. It is the verb **to use**. nǐ hái yòng zhèi-ge ma? *are you still using this?*

\*\*\*

11 - Are Cantonese and Mandarin written in the same way?

*Cantonese and Mandarin de writing same interr.?*

12 - Yes! Everyone uses Chinese characters!  
*same! everyone all use Chinese characters!*

13 - They are written the same, but spoken differently!  
*write same, but speak then neg. same le!*

14 - But now everyone understands Mandarin!  
*now everyone all understand Mandarin!*

15 - That's very practical!  
*this aspect very convenient!*

你还用这个吗?



\*\*\*

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 我听说他快要来了。  
Wǒ tīng-shuō tā kuài yào lái le.
- ② 你会不会写汉字?  
Nǐ huì-bú-huì xiě hànzi?

\*\*\*

## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

- ① He left last month!  
Tā ..... jù zǒu le!
- ② Is it practical?  
.....-bù-.....?
- ③ Now everyone knows.  
Xiànzài ..... dōu zhīdào le.

\*\*\*

Some Chinese verbs are compound verbs, i.e. the verb is followed by its object. The two words form a pair in Chinese but the object is not necessarily translated into English. So, 写字 xiě-zì, to write [to write / characters]; 说话 shuō-huà, to speak [to speak / words]; 吃饭 chī-fàn, to eat [to eat / rice], 看书 kàn-shū, to read [to read / books], etc.

When the "object" is qualified to add more precision to the sentence, the complement is placed between the verbal part of the word and the "object".

- ③ 我们大家都很高兴。  
Wǒmen dàjiā dōu hěn gāoxìng.
- ④ 我听说汉字不容易学。  
Wǒ tīng-shuō hànzi bù róngyì xué.

## Exercise 1

- ① I heard that he will be arriving soon. ② Can you write in Chinese?  
③ We are all very pleased. ④ I have heard that Chinese characters are difficult to learn.

\*\*\*

- ④ I heard that he is starting to study next year.  
Wǒ tīng-shuō tā ..... kāishǐ xué.

## Exercise 2

- ① - shàng-ge yuè - ② fāngbian - fāngbian ③ - dàjiā -  
④ - míngnián -

\*\*\*

So, to eat Chinese food is 吃中国饭 chī Zhōngguó fàn; to speak Chinese is: 说中国话 shuō Zhōngguó huà, and to write Chinese is 写中国字 xiě Zhōngguó zì (or 写汉字 xiě Hànzì).

In 汉语 Hànyǔ, the Chinese language or 汉字 Hànzì, Chinese characters, 汉 Hàn refers to the Han ethnic group, which makes up 93% of the population of China. The term 汉 Hàn has acquired the sense of Chinese, the equivalent of 中国 Zhōngguó when used as an adjective.

34 第三十四课  
Dì sān-shí-sì kè

复习!  
Fùxì!

- 1- 今天我们复习吧!  
Jīntiān wǒmen fùxí ba!
- 2- 你认识她吗?  
Nǐ rènshi tā ma?
- 3- 我已经见过她!  
Wǒ yǐjīng jiàn-guo tā! ①
- 4- 她住在什么地方?  
Tā zhù-zài shénme dìfang?
- 5- 我不知道! 你去问她吧!  
Wǒ bù zhīdào! Nǐ qù wèn tā ba! ②
- 6- 她已经结婚了吗?  
Tā yǐjīng jiéhūn-le ma?
- 7- 我想她结婚了! 她有两个孩子!  
Wǒ xiǎng tā jiéhūn-le! Tā yǒu liǎng-ge háizi! ③

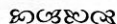
Notes

- ① The verbal suffix -guo indicates an action which has **taken place** at least once before. It is often used with the adverb yǐjīng, *already*: wǒ yǐjīng qù-guo, *I have already been*; nǐ chī-guo méi yǒu? *have you already eaten?* tā yǐjīng lái-guo méi yǒu? *has he already come?*

Thirty-fourth Lesson 34

Revision!  
*revise!*

- 1- Today let's revise!  
*today we revise suggestion!*
- 2- Do you know her?  
*you know she interr.?*
- 3- I've already seen her!  
*I already see experiential she!*
- 4- Where does she live?  
*she reside here what place?*
- 5- I don't know! Go and ask her!  
*I neg. know! you go ask she suggestion!*
- 6- Is she married yet?  
*she already marry le interr.?*
- 7- I would think so! She's got two children!  
*I think she marry le! she have two class. child!*



- ② The sentence-final particle **ba** has several uses: apart from the sense of "isn't it?", it is used as an interrogative for questions where you think you already know the answer. The other main use is for the **imperative**, or for a polite invitation to do something: nǐ chī ba! *go on! have some!* wǒmen zǒu ba! *let's go!* shuō ba! *go on then! say it!*
- ③ Remember that apart from a few terms like *tiān*, *day*; *nián*, *year*; *cì*, *time*; which are easily "counted"; all other nouns, when they are preceded in English by a number, must be translated into Chinese with the relevant **classifier** which is placed between the number and the noun: liǎng-ge háizi, *two children*; sān-ge péngyou, *three friends*; shí-jiǔ-ge fāguó-rén, *nineteen Frenchmen*.



- 8- 她的孩子都多大了?  
Tā-de háizi dōu duō dà le?
- 9- 这个, 我不清楚!  
Zhèi-ge, wǒ bù qīngchū!
- 10- 她什么时候到中国去?  
Tā shénme shíhou dào Zhōngguó qù? ④
- 11- 这个, 我也不知道!  
Zhèi-ge, wǒ yě bù zhīdào!
- 12- 她是学什么的?  
Tā shì xué shénme de?
- 13- 你呢? 你是学什么的?  
Nǐ ne? Nǐ shì xué shénme de? ⑤
- 14- 我不能告诉你!  
Wǒ bù néng gàosu nǐ!
- 15- 好了! 再见!  
Hǎo le! Zàijiàn!

## Notes

- ④ *When...? is ...shénme shíhou...? the subject is placed before this interrogative, and the action it refers to comes afterwards. To go to China, which you learned to say in the first few days simply with qù Zhōngguó, is more often formulated as: dào Zhōngguó qù. The preposition dào, towards, comes before the destination, and the verb qù, to go, is placed at the end of the locative group. The aim can sometimes be expressed afterwards, as in: wǒ dào Zhōngguó qù xué zhōngwén, I am going to China to learn Chinese; nǐ dào nàr qù zuò shénme? what are you going to do there? / you are going there to do what? etc.*

- 8- How old are they?  
*her child all how old le?*
- 9- I'm not sure about that!  
*this I neg. clear!*
- 10- When is she going to China?  
*she what time to China go?*
- 11- I don't know that either!  
*this I also neg. know!*
- 12- What is she studying?  
*she shì study what de?*
- 13- And what about you? What are you studying?  
*you ne? you shì study what de?*
- 14- I can't tell you!  
*I neg. can inform you!*
- 15- OK then! Goodbye!  
*good le! again see!*

我不能告诉你!



- ⑤ The semi-interrogative sentence-final particle *ne* allows you to ask a question without having to repeat the verb used in the previous sentence: *Wǒ bú qù. Nǐ ne? I'm not going. And you? Wǒ hái méi yǒu jiéhūn. Nǐ ne? I'm not married yet. And you? Wǒ hái méi yǒu qù mǎi piào; nǐ ne? I still haven't bought a ticket; and you?* The construction used for emphasis ... *shì... de* accentuates the element between *shì* and *de*: *nǐ shì xué shénme de? and what are you studying? tā shì zuótiān lái de, he came yesterday; wǒ shì bù xiǎng qù de, I don't want to go.*

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 他说过没有?  
Tā shuō-guò méi yǒu?
- ② 你们有几个孩子?  
Nǐmen yǒu jǐ-ge hái-zi?
- ③ 你明天什么时候来?  
Nǐ míng-tiān shénme shí-hòu lái?

\*\*\*

## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

- ① Where do you live?  
Nǐmen zhù-zài ..... ?
- ② Where do you live?  
Nǐmen zhù-zài .... ?
- ③ I can't tell you.  
Wǒ bù néng ..... nǐ.
- ④ How old is your child?  
Nǐ de hái-zi ... .. le?
- ⑤ When are you going to China?  
Nǐmen shénme shí-hòu ... Zhōngguó qù?

④ 他喜欢什么?  
Tā xǐ-huān shénme?

## Exercise 1

- ① Has he already said so? ② How many children have you got?  
③ When will you come tomorrow? ④ What does he like?

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

- ① - shénme dì-fāng ② - nǎr ③ - gào-sù - ④ - jǐ-suì -  
⑤ - dào -.

*Study this lesson very carefully. If some points still seem obscure, refer to the explanations in the previous lessons.*

*To ask someone how old they are, you can use 几岁? jǐ-suì? but only for children up to the age of about ten. For people older than ten, it is more polite to use 多大了? duō dà le? For adults, you can also ask by making a "complimentary" approximation: for example for someone who is about fifty, you can say 你四十几? nǐ sì-shí-jǐ? how much more than forty are you? (see Lesson 20).*

## 35 第三十五课

Dì sān-shí-wǔ kè

### REVISION AND NOTES

#### Read the notes again

29th lesson ②, ⑥, ⑦ – 30th: ②, ③, ⑩ – 31st: ②, ⑤ – 32nd: ②, ⑨ – 33rd: ②, ③, ⑥ – 34th: ①, ②, ④, ⑤.

#### 1 Tones

Reminders about the **pronunciation of the tones** can never be superfluous! You have met the verbs 买 mǎi, *to buy* and 卖 mài, *to sell*. This is a rare case of “opposites”, but incorrect pronunciation of a word, can often make your phrase sound completely incomprehensible! So repeat the lessons by reading the texts out loud, and **pay attention to the tones** of all the syllables:

māi mái mǎi mài  
fān fán fǎn fàn  
chī chí chǐ chǐ  
shī shí shǐ shì  
sī sí sǐ sì

(Remember that after z, c, s, zh, ch, sh and r, the i is in fact a “silent e”, a “non vowel”!)

#### 2 Manner adverbs of degree

In Chinese an action verb is **never** followed directly by an adjective to show how an action is carried out, or the degree achieved by this action. The particle 得 de must **always** come between the verb, and the adjective (or the element) expressing the **level** attained by the action. So: *he learns very quickly* is 他学得很快 tā xué de hěn

## Thirty-fifth Lesson 35

kuài; *she doesn't speak well* is 她说得不好 tā shuō de bù hǎo; word-for-word: [she / to speak / not good]! never [she / not / to speak / good]! “not good” is the **manner** in which she speaks; it is this complete section of the sentence that expresses the **degree** attained by the verb “to speak”. So the construction must be [she / to speak / de / neg. / good]. Another example: *he writes characters very beautifully* is 他的字写得很漂亮 tā de zì xiě de hěn piàoliang, etc.

3 听说 tīng-shuō 觉得 juéde 要 yào These verbs, like some others, are placed **directly** before the part of the sentence which, in English, is often introduced by “that”: *I hear (that) you are Chinese*, 我听说你是中国人。Wǒ tīng-shuō nǐ shì zhōngguó rén. *I find that this place is not bad*, 我觉得这个地方不错。Wǒ juéde zhèi-ge dìfang bú cuò. “That” does not need to be translated.

4 都 dōu is a very common adverb, to show that the subject of the phrase is **plural**, or that it concerns several objects (or people). In Chinese, nouns do not have usually any mark of the plural; so pay attention to this adverb, which is there to express what would be shown by the form of the noun or the verb in other languages! For example, compare the following phrases: 书很贵 shū hěn guì and 书都很贵 shū dōu hěn guì. If in the first case you can hesitate between “the book” and “the books” (is / are very expensive), on the other hand, in the second phrase, the sense is perfectly clear! The adverb 都 dōu is a clear indication of the plural. 我懂 wǒ dǒng, *I understand*; 我都懂 wǒ dōu dǒng, *I understand everything*; here the adverb 都 dōu indicates that the verb refers to whole of the “complement”.

很不错！

hěn bú cuò! *it's really not bad!*

你说什么？

nǐ shuō shénme? *what did you say?*

你自己去看吧！

nǐ zìjǐ qù kàn ba! *go and see for yourself!*

还可以！

hái kěyǐ! *that will do!*

很有意思！

hěn yǒu yìsi! *it's very interesting (amusing)!*

再见！

zàijiàn! *goodbye!*

是新开的！

shì xīn kāi de! *it's just opened!*

6 You will notice that expressions are often repeated in Chinese; for example: 好了！好了！ hǎo le! hǎo le! *that's enough!*

再见！再见！ zàijiàn! zàijiàn! *goodbye!*

走吧！走吧！ zǒu ba! zǒu ba! *let's go! etc.*

### 7 Write in Chinese (Second Wave)

- 1 I'm sorry! It seems that there is no water!
- 2 I just said so (already)!
- 3 Has he been busy recently?
- 4 Time flies!

5 This place is really good fun.

6 He's (already) starting tomorrow.

7 How is your little sister?

### 8 Translation

1 对不起！好象没有水！

Duì bu qǐ! Hǎoxiàng méi yǒu shuǐ!

2 我刚才已经说了！

Wǒ gāngcái yǐjīng shuō le!

3 他最近忙不忙？

Tā zuìjīn máng-bù-máng?

4 时间过得很快！

Shíjiān guò de hěn kuài!

5 这个地方很有意思。

Zhèi-ge dìfang hěn yǒu yìsi.

6 他明天就开始。

Tā míngtiān jiù kāishǐ.

7 你的妹妹怎么样？

Nǐ-de mèimei zěnmeyàng?

*You are already starting to be able to use a certain number of colloquial expressions. Don't worry if you can't remember all of them, or if you make mistakes in the exercises. Once again: it is better to make a mistake, correct it, and then do the exercise again and **get it right** rather than not do them at all. Don't try to get on too quickly by leaving things out. All in good time! Follow the stages as they are presented in the lessons, and you can test your progress again... in a few days.*

36 第三十六课  
Dì sān-shí-liù kè

写信  
Xiě-xìn

- 1 马先生在家里写信：  
Mǎ xiānsheng zài jiālǐ xiě-xìn:
- 2- 老马！你现在作什么？  
Lǎo Mǎ! Nǐ xiànzài zuò shénme?
- 3- 我正在写信！  
Wǒ zhèngzài xiě-xìn! ①
- 4- 你给谁写信？  
Nǐ gěi shéi xiě-xìn? ②
- 5- 一封是给妈妈写的。  
Yì fēng shì gěi māma xiě de. ③
- 6- 另一封呢？  
Lìng yì-fēng ne?

Notes

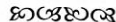
- ① The adverb zhèngzài is used to describe a **progressive state**. It is always placed **before the verb**. Sometimes you will find the synonym zài also placed just before the verb: tā zhèngzài chī-fàn or tā zài chī-fàn, *he is eating*. Tāmen zhèngzài dǎ-pái, *they are playing cards*.
- ② To write to (someone) is [for / someone / write]. It is gěi (the preposition “for”) which is used to construct the “complement” clause, which is always placed **before the verbal group**. wǒ

Thirty-sixth Lesson 36

Writing a Letter

*write letter*

- 1 Mr Ma is at home writing a letter:  
*Ma Mr at home write letter:*
- 2- Mr Ma! What are you doing?  
*old Ma! you now do what?*
- 3- I'm writing a letter!  
*I right now write letter!*
- 4- Who are you writing to?  
*you give who write letter?*
- 5- One is to my mother.  
*one class. shì give mother write de.*
- 6- And the other one?  
*other one class. ne?*



- ▶ míngtiān gěi tā xiě-xìn, *I will write to him tomorrow*; tā gěi nǐ xiě-le ma? *did he write to you?* wǒ bú yào gěi tā xiě-xìn, *I don't want to write to him.*
- ③ Be careful of the word for “letter”; its classifier is not ge but fēng. You must **NEVER** say yí-ge xìn. It is: yì-fēng xìn, liǎng-fēng xìn, *two letters*. The word “letter” may be understood so you can say: liǎng-fēng, *two letters*. wǒ gěi nǐ xiě-le liǎng-fēng xìn, *I wrote you two letters*. Compare with: wǒ gěi nǐ mǎi-le liǎng-běn shū, *I bought you two books*.

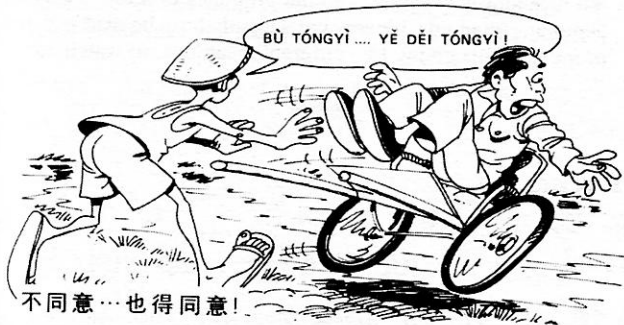
- 7- 另一封是给老板写的!  
Lìng yì-fēng shì gěi lǎobǎn xiě de!
- 8- 哦! ... 你给老板写信, 有什么事儿?  
ó! ... Nǐ gěi lǎobǎn xiě-xìn, yǒu shénme shìr?
- 9- 放假的问题!  
Fàngjià de wèntí! ④
- 10- 怎么了?  
Zěnmē le? ⑤
- 11- 我想最好早一点儿放假!  
Wǒ xiǎng zuìhǎo zǎo yìdiǎnr fàngjià! ⑥⑦
- 12- 对! 这样我们可以早一点儿回来!  
Duì! Zhè yàng wǒmen kěyǐ zǎo yìdiǎnr huílai!

## Notes

- ④ Note that in Chinese as in English adjectives and adjectival clauses come before the noun. Mǎ xiānsheng, Mr Ma. Zhōngguó-fàn, Chinese food; wǒ tàitai de shū, my wife's book; mǎ xiānsheng de chē, Mr Ma's car; Lǎo Lǐ de xínglǐ, Old Li's luggage.
- ⑤ This is a very useful phrase: "What's happening? What's wrong? what are you doing? What is it? And then? ..." nǐ zěnmē le? what's your problem? tā zěnmē le? what's the matter with him?
- ⑥ zuìhǎo..., the best would be if... / it would be better to...! zuìhǎo nǐ qù! it would be better to go yourself! zuìhǎo wǒ yě mǎi, it would be better if I bought some too; zuìhǎo nǐ gěi tā xiě-xìn! the best would be if you wrote to him!

- 7- The other one is to my boss!  
other one class. shì give boss write de!
- 8- Oh! ... What are you writing to the boss about?  
oh! ... you give boss write letter, have what things?
- 9- It's about the holidays!  
holiday de question!
- 10- What about the holidays?  
how le?
- 11- I think it would be best to go on holiday a little earlier!  
I think best early a little holiday!
- 12- That's true! That way we could come back a bit sooner!  
correct! this aspect we can early a little come back!

不同也得同意!



- ⑦ zǎo-yìdiǎnr, in front of the verb, this means a little sooner or a little earlier: nǐ zǎo-yìdiǎnr huílai ba! come back a little sooner! nǐ yīnggāi zǎo-yìdiǎnr gàosu wǒ! you should tell me a little earlier! / you should have told me a little earlier! Like all adverbs, this comes **before the verbal clause!**

- 36 13- 好! 可是我不知道妈妈同意不同意!  
Hǎo! Kěshì wǒ bù zhīdào māma tóngyì-bù-tóngyì!
- 14- 不同意..., 也得同意!  
Bù tóngyì ..., yě děi tóngyì! ⑧
- 15- 啊呀! ... 你这个人, 真是...!  
A ya! ... Nǐ zhèi-ge rén, zhēn shì ... ! □

### Notes

- ⑧ Pay attention to the verb *děi*, *to have to, must*. The character is the same as the particle *dě* used to form manner adverbs. But the meaning is different, and the pronunciation too. There are about one hundred Chinese characters that can be read with two pronunciations giving two different meanings, so watch out! ▶

\*\*\*

### Exercises

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 他正在写信。  
Tā zhèngzài xiě-xìn.
- ② 这个是给谁买的?  
Zhèi-ge shì gěi shéi mǎi de?

- 36 13- Yes! But I don't know if mother would agree!  
*good! but I neg. know mother agree neg. agree!*
- 14- Even if she doesn't agree, she'll just have to!  
*neg. agree... , also must agree!*
- 15- Oh well! That's you all over.  
*exclam. then! ... you this class. person, really are... !*

㊦㊦㊦

- ▶ ⑨ *aya!* is an exclamation expressing surprise, fear or incomprehension. Item 15 is a common colloquial expression used when the speaker does not want to be precise with a description. "well, what about you! you really are...!", "that's just like you!"

\*\*\*

- ③ 不想去..., 你也得去!  
Bù xiǎng qù ..., nǐ yě děi qù!
- ④ 你妈妈同意吗?  
Nǐ māma tóngyī ma?

### Exercise 1

- ① He is writing a letter. ② Who are you buying this for? ③ You don't want to go... but you have to! ④ Does your mother agree?

37 完成句子  
Wánchéng jùzi

- ① He's eating!  
Tā ..... chī-fàn ne!
- ② I don't know if he can come.  
Wǒ bù ..... tā néng-bù-néng lái.
- ③ This letter, did you write it to your boss?  
Xìn, shì-bú-shi ... lǎobǎn xiě de?
- ④ He is writing a letter.  
Tā zhèngzài ..... .

37 第三十七课  
Dì sān-shí-qī kè

- 1- 王老师! 讲中国话的人多不多?  
Wáng Lǎoshī! Jiǎng Zhōngguó huà de rén duō-bù-duō? ①
- 2- 当然很多了!  
Dāngrán hěn duō le!

Notes

- ① You have already met the nominalizing particle **de** placed between two nouns to form the **genitive** (lǎoshī de shū, the teacher's book). Today you are meeting **the relative clause**; the construction is the same: but here it is **back to front compared**!

Exercise 2

① - zhèngzài - ② - zhīdào - ③ - gěi - ④ - xiě-xìn.

Remember to pay careful attention to the Chinese numbering of the pages and lessons!

Remember to use the classifiers, they must be placed between the demonstrative pronoun and the noun. You have already met 个 *ge*, which is the most common one, but many words cannot take 个 *ge*. For example, a book is 一本书 *yì-běn shū*. Today you have met a letter, 一封信 *yì-fēng xìn*. From now on it is a good idea to make a mark in the margin for each new classifier. Then, when you are revising, or when you are working through the Second Wave they will be easier to memorize.

Thirty-seventh Lesson 37

- 1- Mr Wang! Are there a lot of people who speak Chinese?  
*Wang teacher! speak Chinese de people many neg. many?*
- 2- Of course there are!  
*of course very many le!*



- ▶ **to English!** *The book that I am reading is wǒ kàn de shū [I / to read / de / book]; people who go to China, dào Zhōngguó qù de rén [to / China / to go / de / people]; the relative clause is followed by the particle de, followed by the noun: people who speak Chinese is jiǎng zhōngguó-huà de rén.*

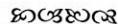


- 3- 听说中国快到八亿人口了!  
Tīng-shuō Zhōngguó kuài dào bā yì rén kǒu le! ②
- 4- 不止了吧! 快到十亿了!  
Bù zhǐ le ba! Kuài dào shí yì le! ③
- 5- 哦! ... 大家是不是都说北京话?  
ó! ... Dàjiā shì-bú-shì dōu shuō Běijīng huà?
- 6- 这个问题很复杂!  
Zhèi-ge wèntí hěn fùzá!
- 7- 在西藏是说藏文, 是不是?  
Zài Xīzàng shì shuō zàngwén, shì-bú-shì?
- 8- 是啊! 在内蒙古说蒙文!  
Shì a! Zài Nèiměng shuō měngwén!
- 9- 还有很多方言。是吧?  
Hái yǒu hěn duō fāngyán. Shì ba?
- 10- 对啊! 上海说上海话; 在广州说广东话!  
Duì a! Shànghǎi shuō Shànghǎi huà; zài Guǎngzhōu shuō Guǎngdōng huà! ④

### Notes

- ② kuài dào, ... will soon arrive..., will soon approach... In general you will find the particle le at the end of the sentence, indicating a new situation.

- 3- I've heard that the population of China will soon be eight hundred million!  
*hear say China rapid arrive eight hundred million population le!*
- 4- And it hasn't stopped there! It will soon be one billion!  
*neg. stop le suggestion! rapid arrive ten hundred million le!*
- 5- Oh! ... And do they all speak Mandarin?  
*oh! ... everyone be neg. be all speak Mandarin?*
- 6- That's a tricky question!  
*this class. question very complicated!*
- 7- In Tibet they speak Tibetan, don't they?  
*at Tibet be speak Tibetan, be neg. be?*
- 8- Yes indeed! In Inner Mongolia they speak Mongolian!  
*be exclam.! at Inner Mongolia speak Mongolian!*
- 9- And there are many dialects, aren't there?  
*still have very many dialects. be suggestion?*
- 10- That's right! In Shanghai they speak the Shanghai dialect and in Guangzhou they speak Cantonese!  
*correct exclam.! Shanghai speak Shanghai dialect; in Guangzhou speak Cantonese!*



- ③ A common expression: "not only that!", "and much more", "not so few!" Another zhǐ, which you will meet written differently tomorrow, also means *only*.
- ④ Don't confuse the southern province of Guǎngdōng, with its "capital", which is the city of Guǎngzhōu, often called Canton in English. Cantonese is written with the same characters as Mandarin, but the pronunciation is **completely different**.

37 11 - 那么，懂北京话的人多不多？

Nàme, dǒng Běijīng huà de rén duō-bù-duō?

12 - 现在多了！大家都得学北京话！

Xiànzài duō le! Dàjiā dōu děi xué Běijīng huà! ⑤

13 - 可是有人还说得不好！  
Kěshì yǒu rén hái shuō de bù hǎo! ⑥

14 - 是啊！有人懂，可是不会说！比方说你吧！

Shì a! Yǒu rén dǒng, kěshì bú huì shuō! Bǐfāng shuō nǐ ba!

15 - 不！我说得不好，可是我还能说几句呢！

Bù! Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo, kěshì wǒ hái néng shuō jǐ jù ne! ⑦ □

### Notes

- ⑤ The sentence-final particle *le* indicates a new situation: “now there are lots of them”; meaning that before there were only a few. *wǒ bù xué zhōngwén le*, I am no longer studying Chinese; *tā bú zhù-zài zhèr le*, he doesn't live here any more.
- ⑥ Remember that the manner adverb following the verb must be preceded by the particle *de*. *tā shuō de hěn kuài*, he speaks very fast; *tā chī de tài duō*, she eats too much; *tā xiě de hěn hǎo*, he writes very well.

11 - In that case, are there many people who understand Mandarin? 37

*there, understand Mandarin de people many neg. many?*

12 - Now there are! Everyone has to study Mandarin!  
*now many le! everyone all must study Mandarin!*

13 - But there are people who still don't speak it well!  
*but have people still speak de neg. good!*

14 - Oh yes! There are people who understand it, but who don't speak it! You, for example!  
*be exclam.! have people understand, but neg. able speak! compare you suggestion!*

15 - No! I don't speak very well, but I can say a few words!  
*neg.! I speak de neg. good, but I still can speak several phrase ne!*

多不多？



- ⑦ *néng* means *can, to be able, to have the ability, the possibility to do something*. *nǐ néng-bù-néng lái?* can you come? *tā bìng le, bù néng lái*, he is ill, he is not able to come. Compare with: *huì, to know how to, to be able*; *wǒ bú huì kāi-chē*, I don't know how to drive; *wǒ bú huì shuō hànyǔ*, I can't speak Chinese; *néng* is close to *kěyǐ*: *zhèr kěyǐ chī-fàn ma?* can we eat here? *Wǒ kěyǐ qù. Nǐ ne?* I can go. What about you? *huì* indicates an ability, acquired after study, or training. *néng* indicates possibility, or physical ability, to do something. *kěyǐ* also indicates a possibility, permission.

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 去的人多不多?  
Qù de rén duō-bù-duō?
- ② 吃饭的人多不多?  
Chī-fàn de rén duō-bù-duō?
- ③ 说话的人是谁?  
Shuō-huà de rén shì shéi?

\*\*\*

## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

- ① Who is the person driving the car?  
Kāi-chē . . . shì shéi?
- ② The person cooking is my teacher!  
Zuò-fàn . . . rén shì wǒ-de lǎoshī!
- ③ There are lots of people going to China now!  
Dào Zhōngguó qù de . . . xiànzài duō . . . !

*In some sentences there can be two subjects in juxtaposition; often the first giving the geographical situation of the second. For example: 中国, 地方大! Zhōngguó, difang dà! China, it's a big country, word-for-word: [China / place / is big].*

*Remember that the adverb always comes before the verb: 还有人 hái yǒu rén, there are still people (here) / there's still someone, word-for-word: [still / there are / people].*

- ④ 看书的人是我的朋友。  
Kàn-shū de rén shì wǒ-de péngyou.

## Exercise 1

- ① Are many people going? ② Are there many people eating?  
③ Who is the person speaking? ④ The person reading a book is my friend.



- ④ People who go to Peking should all speak the Peking dialect.  
Dào Běijīng qù . . . . . dōu dèi . . . .  
Běijīng huà.

## Exercise 2

- ① - de rén - ② - de - ③ - rén - le ④ - de rén - shuō -

*The important element in this lesson is of course the formulation of the relative clause. Remember that all you need to do is reverse the English syntax, and insert the particle 的 de between the noun and the relative clause. So people who study Chinese is 学中国话的人 xué zhōngguó huà de rén; the people who are coming is 来的人 lái de rén...*

*You will meet these constructions again soon. For the moment, read the text through several times out loud, and do the exercises. It will soon become automatic.*

38 第三十八课  
Dì sān-shí-bā kè

在飞机场  
Zài fēi jīchǎng

- 1- 来了! 来了! 你看! 就是他!  
Lái le! Lái le! Nǐ kàn! Jiù shì tā! ①
- 2- 你好! 王大夫! 我非常高兴认识你!  
Nǐ hǎo! Wáng Dàifu! Wǒ fēicháng gāoxìng rènshi nǐ!
- 3- 我也很高兴! 这位是李教授!  
Wǒ yě hěn gāoxìng! Zhèi-wèi shì Lǐ Jiàoshòu! ②
- 4- 好! 我来介绍一下! 这位是我女儿。  
Hǎo! Wǒ lái jièshào yíxià! Zhèi wèi shì wǒ nǚér. ③
- 5- 你好! ... 请原谅! 我的法文不好!  
Nǐ hǎo! ... Qǐng yuánliàng! Wǒ-de fǎwén bù hǎo!

Notes

- ① lái le! *he's arrived! here he is!* The subject *he* (tā) is understood here. The modal sentence-final particle *le* indicates a new situation, a surprise.

Thirty-eighth Lesson 38

At the Airport  
at airport

- 1- Here he comes! Look! It's him!  
*come le! come le! you see! then be he!*
- 2- How do you do, Dr Wang. I'm very pleased to meet you!  
*you good! Wang doctor! I extremely happy know you!*
- 3- Pleased to meet you! This is Professor Li!  
*I also very happy! here class. be Li professor!*
- 4- Good! Let me introduce you! This is my daughter.  
*good! I come introduce a bit! here class. be I daughter.*
- 5- How do you do! Please excuse me! My French is not very good!  
*you good! ... invite forgive! my French neg. good!*

WOMEN SHUO YINGWEN BA!



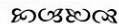
- ② wèi is a "polite" classifier, used here in place of *ge* for people. The family name **always comes before** the title. Lǐ Jiàoshòu, Professor Li; Wáng Dàifu, Doctor Wang; Mǎ Xiānsheng, Mr Ma. Do not confuse *lǎoshī*, teacher with *jiàoshòu*, Professor, University Lecturer.
- ③ lái, *to come*, is often used in colloquial expressions to show the **beginning** of an action. ("I am **going** to make the introductions"). *yí-xià* is placed after the verb and means *one time, once, a moment*.

- 6- 没关系！我们说英文吧！  
Méi guānxi! Wǒmen shuō yīngwén ba! ④
- 7- 我英文也不行！我只会讲中文！  
Wǒ yīngwén yě bù xíng! Wǒ zhǐ huì jiǎng zhōngwén! ⑤
- 8- 好！那就请王大夫翻译吧！  
Hǎo! Nà jiù qǐng Wáng Dàifu fānyì ba!
- 9- 如果说得慢一点儿，就可以！  
Rúguǒ shuō de màn yìdiǎnr, jiù kěyǐ!
- 10- 好！你这是第一次到中国来吗？  
Hǎo! Nǐ zhè shì dì yí cì dào Zhōngguó lái ma?
- 11- 我一九九零年来过一次！  
Wǒ yī jiǔ jiǔ líng nián lái-guo yí cì! ⑥
- 12- 那，你对中国的情况很熟悉啦！  
Nà, nǐ duì Zhōngguó de qíng kuàng hěn shúxi la!

### Notes

- ④ méi guānxi is a very useful expression meaning *never mind!* *it doesn't matter!* Literally it means “no connection”.
- ⑤ Pay attention to “...not...either”, which in Chinese is “... also / not ...”. The adverb *yě* is always placed before the verb: *wǒ yě*,

- 6- Never mind! Let's speak English!  
*neg. connection! we speak English suggestion!*
- 7- My English is no good either! I can only speak Chinese!  
*I English also neg. ok! I only know how talk Chinese!*
- 8- Well! In that case we'll ask Dr Wang to translate then!  
*good! that then invite Wang doctor translate suggestion!*
- 9- If you speak slowly, I can manage!  
*if speak **de** slow a little, then possible!*
- 10- Alright! Is this the first time you have come to China?  
*good! you here be number one time arrive China come interr.?*
- 11- I came once before in 1990!  
*I one-nine-nine-zero year come experiential one time!*
- 12- Well, you are familiar with the situation in China!  
*then, you facing China **de** situation very familiar then!*



- ▷ *méi yǒu, I haven't got any either; wǒ yě bú qù, I'm not going either; wǒ yě bù xǐhuan, I don't like it either.*  
*zhǐ meaning only is placed before the verb: wǒ zhǐ chī ròu, I only eat meat; tā zhǐ lái-le liǎng tiān, he only came for two days; tāmen zhǐ huì shuō guāngdōng huà, they only speak Cantonese.*

- ⑥ The verbal suffix *-guo* indicates an action that has already been experienced at least once. It is usually translated with “already” and the **past perfect**. *nǐ chī-guo méi yǒu? have you already eaten? tā qù-guo ma? has he already been (there)? nǐ jiàn-guo tā ma? have you already seen him?*

It is very simple to say the year in Chinese. Just say the numbers one after the other and add *nián*, *year*. *yī-jiǔ-bā-èr-nián*, *the year 1982; èr-líng-líng-èr-nián*, *2002*.

There is a character in Chinese for “zero” (*líng*), which is sometimes replaced by the Arabic numeral “zero” (a small circle), but is slightly larger than an English 0 (see lesson 39).

- 38
- 13- 不见得! 这机场真不小啊!  
Bú jiàn dé! Zhè jīchǎng zhēn bù xiǎo a! ⑦
- 14- 是啊!  
Shì a!
- 15- 我们到旅馆去吧! 我有点儿累了!  
Wǒmen dào lǚguǎn qù ba! Wǒ yǒudiǎnr lèi le! ⑧
- 16- 好的! 请司机带我们到旅馆去吧!  
Hǎo de! Qǐng sījī dài wǒmen dào lǚguǎn qù ba! □

### Notes

- ⑦ This expression is always used in the negative: "Not for certain! not necessarily! not for sure!". Synonymous with: *bù yíding*.
- ⑧ For verbal adjectives "to be a little ...", or "to be a bit..." is expressed using *yǒudiǎnr*, placed immediately **before** ▶

\*\*\*

### Exercises

#### 练习 Liànxí

- ① 明天也不行!  
Míngtiān yě bù xíng!
- ② 他只会说广东话。  
Tā zhǐ huì shuō Guǎngdōng huà.

- 38
- 13- Not necessarily! What a big airport!  
*neg. seen! this airport really neg. small exclam.!*
- 14- It is, isn't it?  
*be exclam.!*
- 15- Let's go to the hotel, then! I'm a bit tired!  
*we to hotel go suggestion! I have a little tired le!*
- 16- Right! We'll ask the driver to take us to the hotel!  
*good de! invite driver bring us to hotel go suggestion!*

还有什么?

还有什么?



- ▶ **the verbal adjective.** *wǒ yǒudiǎnr lèi, I am a bit tired; jīntiān yǒudiǎnr lěng, today it's a bit cold; zhèr yǒudiǎnr guì, it's a little expensive here.*

\*\*\*

- ③ 请他来当翻译吧!  
Qǐng tā lái dāng fānyì ba!
- ④ 你能不能介绍一下?  
Nǐ néng-bù-néng jièshào yí xià?

### Exercise 1

- ① Tomorrow won't do either! ② He can only speak Cantonese. ③ Ask him to come and be the interpreter! ④ Could you make the introductions?

39 完成句子  
Wánchéng jùzi

- ① I'm very pleased to meet you too!  
Wǒ yě hěn gāoxīng . . . . . nǐ!
- ② You seem a little tired!  
Nǐ hǎoxiàng . . . . . lèi!
- ③ Please take us (there).  
. . . . nǐ dài wǒmen qù.
- ④ Could you take us?  
Nǐ néng-bù-néng . . . wǒmen qù?
- ⑤ If this gentleman speaks French, then it's OK!  
Zhèi . . . xiānsheng huì shuō . . . . . , jiù  
. . . . le!

39 第三十九课  
Dì sān-shí-jiǔ kè

打电话  
Dǎ diàn huà

- 1 - 喂！喂！你是“三三九〇  
一三”吗  
Wèi! Wèi! Nǐ shì «sān sān jiǔ líng yāo  
sān» ma? ①

Notes

- ① Telephone numbers, like years, are expressed by saying each figure one by one. However, for telephone numbers, the figure ▶

Exercise 2

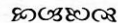
① - rènshi - ② - yōudiǎnr - ③ qǐng - ④ - dài - ⑤ - wèi  
- fǎwén - xíng - .

One of the important points in this lesson is the adverb 只 zhǐ. It expresses a restriction (only) on the object of the verb. 我只会英文 wǒ zhǐ huì yīngwén, I only speak English. When the restriction concerns a date, or a period of time, another adverb is used specifically for that purpose. I'm only (not) coming (until) tomorrow is 我明天才来 wǒ míngtiān cái lái.

Thirty-ninth Lesson 39

Making a Phone Call  
make phone call

- 1 - Hello! Hello! Is that 339013?  
hello! hello! you be three three nine zero one three interr.?



- ▶ “one” is not pronounced yī, but yāo, to avoid the risk of confusion between yī, one and qī, seven.

- 2- 是！你找谁？  
Shì! Nǐ zhǎo shéi? ②
- 3- 找王同志！  
Zhǎo Wáng Tóngzhì! ③
- 4- 好！请你等一下！我去叫他！  
Hǎo! Qǐng nǐ děng yí-xià! Wǒ qù jiào tā!
- 5- ... 喂！  
... Wèi!
- 6- 喂！王同志！你好！我是李明！  
Wèi! Wáng Tóngzhì! Nǐ hǎo! Wǒ shì Lǐ Míng!
- 7- 哦！你好！好久不见了！  
ò! Nǐ hǎo! Hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn le! ④
- 8- 对！... 我有几个问题要跟你谈！  
Dùi! ... Wǒ yǒu jǐ-ge wèn tí yào gēn nǐ tán!
- 9- 好的！你什么时候有空？  
Hǎo de! Nǐ shén me shí hou yǒu kòng?

### Notas

- ② Be careful of word order! "Who do you want to speak to? Who do you wish to contact?" is [you / to seek / who?]. Do not confuse with *shéi zhǎo nǐ?* *who is asking / looking for you?*
- ③ The word *tóngzhì*, *comrade*, is still used as a term of address between Communist Party members. It was widely used in mainland China before the economic expansion of the 1990s. You will still hear it in re-runs of old television series or films ▶

- 2- Yes, it is! Who are you calling?  
*be! you seek who?*
- 3- I would like to speak to (comrade) Wang!  
*seek Wang comrade!*
- 4- Please wait a moment! I'll go and tell him!  
*good! invite you wait one moment! I go call he!*
- 5- Hello!  
*... hello!*
- 6- Hello, (comrade) Wang! How are you! This is Li Ming speaking.  
*hello! Wang comrade! you good! I be Li Ming!*
- 7- Oh! Hello! Long time no see!  
*oh! you good! good time neg. see le!*
- 8- I know! There are several things I wanted to discuss with you!  
*correct! ... I have several question wish with you discuss!*
- 9- I see! When do you have some free time?  
*good de! you what time have empty?*

你什么时候有空？



- ▶ describing situations dating from before this period. Nowadays, apart from in the political context, it is considered old-fashioned in its original sense, but has been given a renaissance with the meaning of "same-sex partner".
- ④ A set phrase: *long time no see!* Here *hǎo* is synonymous with *hěn*. As in English "it's a **very** long time since we..." Also note: *tā hǎo jiǔ méi yǒu lái, it's a long time since he came this way; wǒ hěn jiǔ méi yǒu qù, it's a long time since I went there.*



- 10 - 我明天中午没有事儿!  
Wǒ míngtiān zhōngwǔ méi yǒu shìr! ⑤
- 11 - 那... 你到我家来吃便饭吧!  
Nà... nǐ dào wǒ jiā lái chī biàn fàn ba!
- 12 - 不! 不用麻烦了!  
Bù! Bú yòng máfan le! ⑥
- 13 - 不麻烦! 不麻烦! ... 有什么吃什么。  
Bù máfan! Bù máfan! ... Yǒu shénme chī shénme. ⑦
- 14 - 好的!  
Hǎo de!
- 15 - 你爱吃饺子吗? 明天给你包饺子!  
Nǐ ài chī jiǎozi ma? Míngtiān gěi nǐ bāo jiǎozi! ⑧
- 16 - 好极了!  
Hǎo jí le!

## Notes

- ⑤ míngtiān zhōngwǔ, *tomorrow midday*; shàngwǔ, *morning*; xiàwǔ, *afternoon*; zuótiān xiàwǔ, *yesterday afternoon*; jīntiān shàngwǔ, *this morning*.
- ⑥ bú yòng! *no need to...!* bú yòng qù, *there's no need to go*. bú yòng shuō, *there's no need to say!* etc.
- ⑦ máfan, *to bother, to trouble, to disturb, to upset*. Note the following colloquial expressions: máfan nǐ le! *sorry to bother you!* hěn máfan, *it's a real bother*; tā hěn máfan, *he's really* ▶

- 10 - I haven't got anything tomorrow lunchtime.  
*I tomorrow midday neg. have things!*
- 11 - In that case come and have something to eat at my house!  
*there! you arrive I home come eat simple meal suggestion!*
- 12 - Oh no, I don't want to bother you!  
*neg! neg. use bother le!*
- 13 - But it's no bother! We'll just eat whatever there is!  
*neg. bother! neg. bother! ... have what eat what.*
- 14 - Agreed then!  
*good de!*
- 15 - Do you like dumplings? I'll make some for you tomorrow!  
*you like eat dumpling interr.? tomorrow for you wrap dumpling!*
- 16 - Wonderful!  
*good extreme le!*

我非常高興認識你!



我非常高兴认识你!

- ▶ *annoying / he's a real bother. máfan-bù-máfan?, is it bothering you? zhèi-ge rén hěn máfan, that guy is really troublesome.*
- ⑧ Sometimes, for certain foods, the verb ài is used in the sense of *to like*, instead of xǐhuan. jiǎozi are a sort of dumpling, sometimes steamed (zhēng jiǎozi), sometimes fried (jiān jiǎozi) in a pan. "To prepare" dumplings is bāo jiǎozi ("to wrap up the dumpling"). The Chinese are very fond of dumplings.

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 请你说吧!  
Qǐng nǐ shuō ba!
- ② 这个人很麻烦!  
Zhèi-ge rén hěn máfan!
- ③ 你有空吗?  
Nǐ yǒu kòng ma?

\*\*\*

完成句子  
Wánchéng jùzi

- ① Long time no see!  
Wǒmen hǎo . . . bú jiàn le!
- ② I'll go to your place tomorrow, alright?  
Wǒ . . . . . dào nǐ nàr qù, hǎo-bù-hǎo?
- ③ I'll go to your house tomorrow, OK?  
Wǒ míngtiān . . . nǐ jiāliqù, hǎo-bù-hǎo?
- ④ Everyone will have ravioli, won't they?  
Dàjiā dōu . . . jiǎozi, hǎo- . . -hǎo?

\*\*\*

- ④ 你爱吃饺子吗?  
Nǐ ài chī jiǎozi ma?

## Exercise 1

- ① Please say! ② He's very annoying! ③ Have you got free time?  
④ Do you like dumplings?

\*\*\*

- ⑤ Will you be free tomorrow?  
Nǐ míngtiān . . . kòng ma?
- ⑥ Who are you looking for? Who do you want to speak to?  
Nǐ zhǎo . . . . ?

## Exercise 2

- ① - jiǔ - ② - míngtiān - ③ - dào - ④ - chī - bù - ⑤ - yǒu  
- ⑥ - shéi.

\*\*\*

40 第四十课  
Dì sì-shí kè

参观  
Cānguān

- 1- 今天我们参观这个研究所。  
Jīntiān wǒmen cānguān zhèi-ge yánjiū suǒ.
- 2- 我有几个问题想问一下!  
Wǒ yǒu jǐ-ge wèntí xiǎng wèn yí-xià!
- 3- 好! 可以! 你就问吧!  
Hǎo! Kěyǐ! Nǐ jiù wèn ba!
- 4- 这个研究所是哪年成立的?  
Zhèi-ge yánjiū suǒ shì nǐ nián chénglì de? ①
- 5- 是一九九八年成立的!  
Shì yī jiǔ jiǔ bā nián chénglì de!
- 6- 你们这儿主要是作什么的?  
Nǐmen zhèr zhǔyào shì zuò shénme de?
- 7- 主要是搞电脑, 搞网站。  
Zhǔyào shì gǎo diànnǎo, gǎo wǎngzhàn. ②

Notes

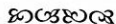
- ① Which...? is pronounced nǎ or nǐ. nǐ nián? in which year? In this sentence, you can hear the construction for emphasis shì... de, the particle de always coming at the end of the sentence. >

Fortieth Lesson 40

On a Visit

visit

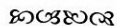
- 1- Today we are going to visit this research center.  
*today we visit this class. research office.*
- 2- I have several questions I would like to ask!  
*I have several class. question think ask a moment!*
- 3- Yes! Go ahead and ask then!  
*good! possible! you then ask suggestion!*
- 4- When was this research centre founded?  
*this class. research office be what year establish de?*
- 5- It was founded in 1998!  
*be one-nine-nine-eight year establish de!*
- 6- What is the main part of your work here?  
*you here mainly shì do what de?*
- 7- Our main work concerns computers and web sites!  
*main be do electronic brain, do network station.*



- > ② gǎo is a synonym for zuò, to do, to make, but a more colloquial expression. So learn to distinguish between: nǐ zuò shénme? what are you doing? nǐ gǎo shénme? what are you playing at?  
wǎng is the “web”, Internet. In Chinese it is also the word for “net”. zhàn is a station, a stop, wǎngzhàn is a website.  
shàng wǎng is to go on line, word-for-word: [to go on Internet].  
Email is diànzǐ yóujiàn which can be shortened to diànyóu .  
For the translation into Chinese of the word “email” you may also hear mèi ér (little-sister), for its resemblance to the word “mail”.

- 8- 哦! ... .. 作研究工作吗?  
ó! ... .. Zuò yánjiū gōng zuò ma?
- 9- 对! 我们这儿只搞研究!  
不搞生产。  
Dui! Wǒmen zhèr zhǐ gǎo yánjiū! Bù gǎo shēngchǎn.
- 10- 生产由哪个单位来负责?  
Shēngchǎn yóu nǐ-ge dānwèi lái fùzé? ③
- 11- 由“上无三厂”!  
Yóu «Shàng Wú Sān Chǎng»!
- 12- “上无三厂”, 什么意思?  
«Shàng Wú Sān Chǎng», shénme yìsi? ④
- 13- “上”是上海!“无”是无线电!  
«Shàng» shì Shànghǎi! «Wú» shì wú xiàndiàn!
- 14- 懂了! 懂了!“三厂”的意思是“第三个工厂”!  
Dǒng le! Dǒng le! «Sān Chǎng» de yìsi shì «dì sān ge gōngchǎng»!
- 15- 对! 完全对! 好了! 现在我们去参观吧!  
Dui! Wánquán duì! Hǎo le! Xiànzài wǒmen qù cānguān ba! □

- 8- Oh! ... .. you do the research?  
*oh! ... .. do research work interr.?*
- 9- That's right! Here we only do research! We don't do the production.  
*correct! we here only do research! neg. do production.*
- 10- Which unit takes charge of production?  
*production by what class. unit come responsible?*
- 11- S. W. T. F.  
*by "on without three factory"!*
- 12- What does S. W. T. F. mean?  
*"on without three factory", what meaning?*
- 13- Shang is for Shanghai, Wu is for Wuxian (wireless)  
*"on" be on sea! "without" be without wire electric!*
- 14- Now I understand! "Three factory" means "third factory."  
*understand le! understand le! "three factory" de meaning be "number three class. factory"!*
- 15- That's exactly right! Well, now let's go on our visit!  
*correct! complete correct! good le! now we go visit suggestion!*



## Notes

- ③ Be careful not to confuse *yǒu* (the verb *to have*) and *yóu* (*from / organized by / by*). *yóu* is used to introduce the agent, the person or organization bearing responsibility. *yóu nǐ lái juéding!* *it's up to you to make the decision!* *yóu shéi lái fùzé?* *who is responsible for this?*
- ④ Chinese loves logos and abbreviations. You have already met Běi Dà, *Beijing University*, abbreviation for Běijīng Dàxué. You will also meet Rén-Dà, abbreviation of Rénmín Dàibiāo Dàhui, *The People's National Assembly*. *shénme yìsi?* or *shì shénme yìsi?* *what does this mean? what does... mean?* Be careful of the pronunciation of *yìsi*: "yee ss"

## Exercises

### 练习

Liànxí

- ① 明天我们去参观什么?  
Míngtiān wǒmen qù cānguān shénme?
- ② 这个字是什么意思?  
Zhèi-ge zì shì shénme yìsi?
- ③ 他搞什么工作?  
Tā gǎo shénme gōngzuò?
- ④ 我现在都懂了!  
Wǒ xiànzài dōu dǒng le!

\*\*\*

### 完成句子

Wánchéng jùzi

- ① Can I ask a few questions?  
Wǒ kěyǐ-bù-kěyǐ . . . jǐ-ge wèntí?
- ② What is your main responsibility?  
Nǐ zhǔ yào fù zé . . . . . ?
- ③ We do not do research here.  
Zhèr, wǒmen bù gǎo . . . . .
- ④ What you say is completely true!  
Nǐ shuō . . wánquán duì!

## Exercise 1

40

- ① What are we going to visit tomorrow?
- ② What does this character mean?
- ③ What is his job?
- ④ Now I understand it all!

我们这儿只搞研究!



\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

- ① - wèn -
- ② - shénme
- ③ - yánjiū
- ④ - de -

*Don't worry too much about the additional vocabulary presented in certain dialogues. The important thing is to learn the most common turns of phrase by heart, repeating them time and time again. Do not hesitate to go back to the previous lessons; above all keep up the daily routine of study. Your success depends on it.*

41 第四十一课  
Dì sì-shí-yī kè

来晚了  
Lái wǎn le

- 1- 快一点儿! 已经开演了!  
Kuài yìdiǎnr! Yǐjīng kāi yǎn le!
- 2- 好! 买两张票! 你先进去  
吧!  
Hǎo! Mǎi liǎng-zhāng piào! Nǐ xiān jìn-qù  
ba! ①
- 3- 我们是第几排?  
Wǒmen shì dì jǐ pái? ②
- 4- 第五排! 很近!  
Dì wǔ pái! Hěn jìn!
- 5- 那好! 这样就听得很清  
楚!  
Nà hǎo! Zhè yàng jiù tīng de hěn qīngchū!
- 6- 今天演什么戏?  
Jīntiān yǎn shénme xì?

Notes

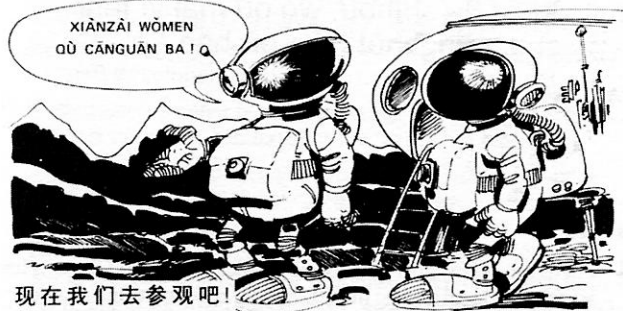
- ① For wide, flat objects that are not thick, the classifier is zhāng. It is used for sheets of paper, tickets, tables, etc. piào, ticket; fēijī piào, plane ticket; huǒchē piào, train ticket. Two, when it is not being used as an ordinal number is liǎng, and not èr.

Forty-first Lesson 41

Being Late  
come late le

- 1 - Hurry up! The show has begun!  
quick a little! already start act le!
- 2 - Right! I'll get two tickets! You go in first!  
good! buy two class. tickets! you before enter go suggestion!
- 3 - Which row are we?  
we be number how many row?
- 4 - The fifth row. It's very close!  
number five row! very near!
- 5 - That's good! That means we will hear very clearly!  
there good! this aspect then hear de very clear!
- 6 - What's on today?  
today act what play?

503808



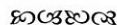
- ② To express an ordinal number all you have to do is place dì in front of the number. When the sentence is in the interrogative, just replace the number by jǐ, how many?

- 7- 今天是话剧，“茶馆儿”！  
Jīntiān shì huà jù, «Chá guǎnr»! ③
- 8- 作者是谁？你知道吗？  
Zuò zhě shì shéi? Nǐ zhīdào ma?
- 9- 作者是老舍！  
Zuò zhě shì Lǎo Shě!
- 10- 他还在吗？  
Tā hái zài ma?
- 11- 已经死了。是 1966 年去世的。  
Yǐjīng sǐ le. Shì yī-jiǔ-liù-liù nián qùshì de. ④
- 12- 真可惜！  
Zhēn kěxī!
- 13- 休息的时候，我去买一份儿说明书！好不好？  
Xiūxi de shíhòu, wǒ qù mǎi yí fèn shuōmíngshū! Hǎo-bù-hǎo? ⑤
- 14- 好！  
Hǎo!

### Notes

- ③ There are many different forms of theatre (xi) in China. There are several local styles: jīngjù, *Peking opera*; yuèjù, *Cantonese opera*; píngjù (from Héběi province), and more modern plays like huàjù, which is spoken drama (not sung).  
*The Teahouse* describes the development of one such establishment, typical of old Peking, from the end of the Qing dynasty until the Guomindang era. The author, Lao She, was

- 7- Today it's a play, "The Teahouse".  
*today be play, "tea house"!*
- 8- Do you know who the author is?  
*author be who? you know interr.?*
- 9- The author is Lao She!  
*author be Lao She!*
- 10- Is he still alive?  
*he still here interr.?*
- 11- No, he isn't. He died in 1966.  
*already dead le! be in one-nine-six-six year go world de.*
- 12- That's a pity!  
*really pity!*
- 13- At the interval, I'll go and buy a programme, OK?  
*rest de time, I go buy one class. explanation book! good neg. good?*
- 14- Yes, please!  
*good!*



- ▶ very familiar with the customs of Peking; he is one of the best known modern Chinese authors. He died at the beginning of the Cultural Revolution, in 1966.

④ *sǐ le, dead* is a rather harsh expression. In polite conversation it is better to use the gentler *qùshì le, to die / to pass away*.

⑤ At the theater, *xiūxi* means the **interval**. The first sense of this word is "rest". *nǐxiūxi ba! go and have a rest! xiànzài xiūxi wǔ fēn zhōng! and now, five minutes interval!*

The construction *de-shíhòu* means *when / at that moment / at the moment when...*, and it comes **after** the description of the moment. *chī-fàn de-shíhòu, when we are eating / during lunch/dinner. kàn-shū de-shíhòu, when we read. wǒ zài de-shíhòu, when I am there...; Lǎo Wáng zài de-shíhòu wǒmen dōu hěn gāoxìng, when Wang is there, we are all very pleased. kāi-chē de-shíhòu néng-bù-néng chōu-yān? when you are driving, can I smoke? etc.*

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 请你等我一会！  
Qǐng nǐ děng wǒ yì-huǐr!
- ② 已经开始了吗？  
Yǐjīng kāishǐ le ma?
- ③ 这儿听得很清楚。  
Zhèr tīng de hěn qīngchū.

\*\*\*

## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

- ① Hurry up, please!  
Qǐng nǐmen . . . . yīdiǎnr!
- ② I have already been waiting for ten minutes.  
Wǒ . . . . . děng le shí fēn zhōng.
- ③ What a pity! We arrived late!  
Hěn . . . . ! wǒmen lái . . . . le!
- ④ What play is on today?  
. . . . . yǎn shénme xì?

\*\*\*

- ④ 你要不要休息？  
Nǐ yào-bú-yào xiūxi?

## Exercise 1

① Please wait for me a minute. ② Has it already begun? ③ We can hear very well from here. ④ Would you like a rest?

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

① - kuai - ② - yǐjīng - ③ - kěxī - wǎn - ④ jīntiān -.

*Remember that the best way to avoid the ambiguity created by the numerous homonyms in spoken Chinese is to study the characters. Arm yourself with a fine-point pen and a lot of patience and copy out the most common characters. You will gradually come to memorize them, almost effortlessly.*

\*\*\*



## 42 第四十二课

Dì sì-shí-èr kè

### REVISION AND NOTES

#### Read the notes again

36th lesson: ②, ③, ④ - 37th: ①, ⑥ - 38th: ⑤, ⑥, ⑦ - 39th: ②, - 41st: ⑤.

#### 1 Be careful of word order!

你现在做什么？ Nǐ xiànzài zuò shénme? *What are you doing now?* [you / now / to do / what]. In all simple sentences, the order is [subject / verb / complement]. So always remember to place the object **after the verb group**. Remember that the **date** is always placed **before the action** (before the verb).

Also remember that **adverbs**, locations and all “preposition clauses” (for..., with..., to..., from..., towards..., etc.) come **before the verb**:

你现在做什么？ Nǐ xiànzài zuò shénme? *What are you doing now?*

你明天做什么？ Nǐ míngtiān zuò shénme? *What are you doing tomorrow?*

他给你写了两封信！ Tā gěi nǐ xiě le liǎng-fēng xìn! *He wrote you two letters!* [he / for / you / to write / le / two letters];

我在那儿有很多朋友！ Wǒ zài nàr yǒu hěn duō péngyou! *I have lots of friends there!* [I / there / have / very / many / friends].

#### 2 Watch out for adverbs!

我想最好还是你去！ Wǒ xiǎng zuìhǎo háishi nǐ qù! *I think (that) the best (would be) (that) you go (there) yourself!* Chinese is usually very concise, so it seems very simple. The verbs are not conjugated, there is no conditional and no subjunctive.

## Forty-second Lesson 42

“That” is not translated, etc. Once again, it is essential, and you know why, to put adverbs **in the right place**, and to respect **word order** in a sentence. Read the notes carefully and underline in color the constructions that must be respected.

#### 3 Adjectives always come before nouns and names before titles

王老师！ Wáng Lǎoshī! *Teacher Wang!* 放假的问题！ fàngjià de wèntí! *problems about vacation!* Here are two more examples to show that the description always comes before the noun whether the nominalizing particle is present or not. “Teacher Wang” word-for-word is [Wang / teacher] and “problems about vacation” is [vacation / (particle) / problem]. For family names, titles, positions, etc. the nominalizing particle is not necessary.

You have seen that this construction is not only used for **genitives** and **possessives**. The order is also the same for other forms of nominalization, for example the **relative**: 去的人... qù de rén..., *the people who are going*.

To get it right, just remember that the word order is the **opposite of English**: 放假的问题！ fàngjià de wèntí! *problems about vacation*; 学中文的朋友 xué Zhōngwén de péngyou, *friends who study Chinese*. **Just turn the sentence back to front**. As for the relative pronoun, it is “translated” by the nominalizing particle, which is placed **between the verb group and the noun**.

When things get more complicated and there are two nominalized elements in the sentence, well... you simply put the English sentence back to front! 学中文的人的朋友 xué zhōngwén de rén de péngyou, *the friends of the people who study Chinese* is translated: [study Chinese / **de** / people / **de** / friends].

These are very important for expressing the mood of a verb. For example, with the imperative (or invitation) or to express a desire or a question tag like “isn’t it”, “doesn’t he”, note the particle **ba**:

到旅馆去吧！ Dào lǚguǎn qù ba! *Let's go to the hotel!*

好吧？ Hǎo ba? *That's OK, isn't it? All right?*

你去吧！ Nǐ qù ba! *Go on!*

他们都懂吧？ Tāmen dōu dǒng ba? *They all understand, don't they? (or: they understand everything, don't they?);*

你累了吧？ Nǐ lèi le ba? *You're tired, aren't you?*

### 5 Adjectival verbs

They are placed **after the subject**, and are often preceded by an adverb. 我有点儿累！ wǒ yǒudiǎnr lèi! *I (am) a bit tired!* You have already met several of these adjectival verbs. For example 累 lèi, *to be tired*; 饿 è, *to be hungry*; 清楚 qīng chu, *to be clear*; 晚 wǎn, *to be late*; 可惜 kěxī, *to be a pity*. With these verbs, you never need to use the verb 是 shì, *to be*, between the subject and the adjectival verb. The verb “to be” is only used in “definitions” to express the identity that exists between two nouns, or two nominal groups. For example “he is a teacher”; “he is (a) Chinese (man)”; “this is a table”, etc.

But, in sentences like “I (am) thirsty”, “I (am) tired”, “I (am) hot”, “he (is) kind”, etc., you simply place the adjectival verb directly after the subject noun. “To be”, in all these cases, is never translated into Chinese. 我累 wǒ lèi, *I am tired*. 他好 tā hǎo, *he is good*. 我渴 wǒ kě, *I'm thirsty*. 很可惜 hěn kěxī, *it's a pity*. 也不错 yě bú cuò, *that's not bad either!*

### 6 Adverbs

有点儿 yǒudiǎnr means *to have a little* or *to be a little* and comes just before an adjectival verb. 有点儿累 yǒudiǎnr lèi,

*to be a bit tired*; 有点儿饿 yǒudiǎnr è, *to be a bit hungry*.

This adverb is only used with **adjectival verbs**. For action verbs, *a little* is translated 一下 yí-xià and comes **after the action verb**: 等一下！ děng yí-xià! *wait a moment!* Sometimes you will meet 一点儿 yídiǎnr, *eat some! have a little!* 吃一点儿吧！ chī yídiǎnr ba!

### 7 Asking someone to do something

请你来！ qǐng nǐ lái! *please come!* The verb 请 qǐng is used as a form of polite address, to ask for help, or to invite someone to do something. It is also the verb *to invite*. Some examples:

请他来吧！ Qǐng tā lái ba! *Invite him to come! Let him come!*

请你说吧！ Qǐng nǐ shuō ba! *Speak! Please say what you think!*

请你到这儿来吃饭！ Qǐng nǐ dào zhèr lái chī fàn! *Please come and eat here!*

But also with the sense of “inviting”.

他请我。 Tā qǐng wǒ. *He's inviting me. He's treating me.*

你请他们坐吧！ Nǐ qǐng tāmen zuò ba! *Ask them to sit down! Please tell them to sit down!*

### 8 The word 意思 yìsi (sense, interest, meaning)

This comes into many colloquial expressions. You have already met 有意思 yǒu yìsi, *it's interesting, amusing*; 很有意思 hěn yǒu yìsi, *very interesting, very amusing*. There are two negative forms: 没有意思 méi yǒu yìsi, *not interesting, not fun*, sometimes shortened to 没意思 méi yìsi, *not interesting, not fun*, or the expression: 不很有意思 bù hěn yǒu yìsi, *not very interesting, not much fun*.

With the sense of “meaning”, you will find the word in ... 是什么意思？ ... shì shénme yìsi? *what does... mean?*

where the element concerned by the question is placed at the **beginning of the phrase**. The reply is usually constructed in the following way: ...的意思是... ... de yìsi shì ... (... means...) word-for-word, [the meaning of... is...];

这个字的意思是什么？ zhèi-ge zì de yìsi shì shénme?  
*what does this character mean?*

这句话是什么意思？ zhèi-jù huà shì shénme yìsi?  
*what does this sentence mean?* These are two synonymous phrases for asking the meaning of a word or a sentence.

### 9 Useful phrases to remember

你看！

nǐ kàn! *look! you see!*

问题很复杂！

wèntí hěn fùzá! *a very difficult problem!*

就是他！

jiù shì tā! *that's him!*

没关系！

méi guānxi! *it doesn't matter!*

你有没有空？

nǐ yǒu-méi-yǒu kòng? *have you got some spare time?*

完全对了！

wánquán duì le! *that's exactly so!*

快一点儿！

kuài yìdiǎnr! *hurry up!*

### 10 Write in Chinese (Second Wave exercise)

- 1 He's at home writing a letter.
- 2 Please come back a little earlier!
- 3 Does Teacher Wang agree?
- 4 Are there many people who speak Chinese?
- 5 Are there lots of Chinese speakers?
- 6 Who is the person who is writing a letter?
- 7 Who is the person writing a letter?
- 8 What is your main activity here?
- 9 What do you mainly do here?
- 10 Not many people understand.
- 11 There are few people who understand.
- 12 When is he coming to France?

### 11 Translation

- 1 他在家写信。  
Tā zài jiāli xiě-xìn.
- 2 请你们早一点儿回来！  
Qǐng nǐmen zǎo yìdiǎnr huí lai!
- 3 王老师同意不同意？  
Wáng Lǎoshī tóngyi-bù-tóngyi?
- 4 说中文的人多不多？  
Shuō zhōngwén de rén duō-bù-duō?
- 5 说中国话的人多吗？  
Shuō Zhōngguó huà de rén duō ma?
- 6 写信的人是谁？  
Xiě-xìn de rén shì shéi?

- 7 谁写信?  
Shéi xiě-xìn?
- 8 你在这儿主要是做什么?  
Nǐ zài zhèr zhǔyào shì zuò shénme?
- 9 你在这里主要是做什么的?  
Nǐ zài zhèlǐ zhǔyào shì zuò shénme de?
- 10 懂的人不多。  
Dǒng de rén bù duō.
- 11 懂的人不很多。  
Dǒng de rén bù hěn duō.
- 12 他什么时候到法国来?  
Tā shénme shíhòu dào Fǎguó lái?

## 43 第四十三课

### Dì sì-shí-sān kè

很 满 意  
Hěn mǎnyì

- 1 - 老王！你哥哥现在怎么样？  
Lǎo Wǎng! Nǐ gēge xiànzài zěnmeyàng? ①

#### Notes

- ① You have already seen that, for family members, the **nominalizing particle de** can be understood in personal pronouns: *my (older)* ▶

Now that you have studied forty-two lessons, are you pleased with your work? Of course there are things you have found difficult, and you sometimes hesitate when you are doing the translation exercises. Each day you will meet more new elements of the Chinese language, but you will constantly use what was introduced in the previous lessons, particularly the turns of phrase that are the furthest removed from English constructions. From lesson fifty onwards, after each lesson, with the Second Wave you will be asked to revise one of the first lessons (where you will make an oral and a written translation). You will gradually memorize the colloquial expressions without difficulty by meeting them repeatedly. One last word: always keep your attention on the tones.

ㄟㄨㄛㄨㄛ

## Forty-third Lesson 43

Very Pleased  
*very contented*

- 1 - Wang! How is your big brother?  
*old Wang! you older brother now what aspect?*

ㄟㄨㄛㄨㄛ

- ▶ *brother, wǒ gēge or wǒ-de gēge. His (younger)brother, tā didi or tā-de didi; my wife, wǒ tàitai or wǒ-de tàitai. In the same way: my family / my home / my house, wǒ jiā or wǒ-de jiā.*

2- 他好象很满意! 我今天刚收到他的信!

Tā hǎoxiàng hěn mǎnyì! Wǒ jīntiān gāng shōudào tā-de xìn! ②

3- 那儿的的生活, 他现在习惯了  
了吗?

Nàr de shēnghuó, tā xiànzài xíguàn le ma? ③

4- 我想他现在一定习惯了!  
Wǒ xiǎng tā xiànzài yídìng xíguàn le!

5- 他在东京已经注多久了?  
Tā zài Dōngjīng yǐjīng zhù duō jiǔ le? ④

6- 注了四个月了!  
Zhù-le sì-ge yuè le! ⑤

7- 那不错! 他日文肯定说得  
很好了!  
Nà bú cuò! Tā rìwén kěndìng shuō de hěn hǎo le!

## Notes

② gāng is an adverb that is placed **just before the verb**, and indicates that an action has just taken place, in **the very recent past**. There is a synonym: gāngcái.

③ Remember to place de between the adjective and the noun. nàr de shēnghuó, *life over there*; Lǐ xiānsheng de chē, *Mr Li's cars*; Zhōngguó rén de xíguàn, *Chinese people's habits*; chī-fàn de wèntí, *the food question*; etc.

2- He seems very pleased! I just received a letter from him today!

*he seem very contented! I today just receive his letter!*

3- Has he got used to life there now?

*there de life, he now habit le interr.?*

4- I think he must be used to it now!

*I think he now certain habit le!*

5- How long has he been living in Tokyo?

*he at Tokyo already live how long le?*

6- He's been living there for four months now!

*live le four class. month le!*

7- That's not bad! He must speak very good Japanese now!

*that neg. bad! he Japanese surely speak de very good le!*

练习



他现在习惯了吗?

④ Be careful always to put **the place before the verb group!** On the other hand, the **length of time** is always placed **after the verb**. wǒ dāi-le liǎng tiān, *I stayed for two days*; wǒ zhù-le liǎng nián, *I lived there for two years*. duō-jiǔ is one way to ask *how long time?*

⑤ Whenever possible, the subject is understood. The more concise the phrase, the better. Note the two le. The verbal suffix for **the completed action**, and the sentence-final particle for **new situations**. "So far, he has already been living here for four months".

- 8 - 这我不知道!  
Zhè wǒ bù zhīdào!
- 9 - 他打算什么时候回来?  
Tā dǎsuàn shénme shíhòu huí lái?
- 10 - 可能明年才回来!  
Kěnéng míngnián cái huí lai! ⑥
- 11 - 他太太也去了吗?  
Tā tàitai yě qù-le ma?
- 12 - 没有! 他的太太跟小胖一起住在香港!  
Méi yǒu! Tā-de tàitai gēn Xiǎo Pàng yì qǐ zhù-zài Xiānggǎng! ⑦
- 13 - 小胖是谁?  
Xiǎo pàng shi shéi?
- 14 - 小胖就是他们的儿子!  
Xiǎo pàng jiù shì tāmen-de érzi! □

### Notes

- ⑥ The adverb *cái* has several meanings. The most common is a restriction on the **date**. The action took place or will take place later than expected. *tā zuótiān cái gào su wǒ, he told me only*

\*\*\*

- 8 - That I don't know!  
*here I neg. know!*
- 9 - When is he counting on coming back?  
*he plan what time return?*
- 10 - Possibly not before next year!  
*possible next year only return!*
- 11 - Did his wife go too?  
*he wife also go le interr.?*
- 12 - No! His wife and "Little Fatty" live in Hong Kong!  
*neg. have! his wife with small plump together live at Hong Kong!*
- 13 - Who is "Little Fatty"?  
*small plump be who?*
- 14 - Why, "Little Fatty" is their son!  
*small plump then be their son!*

☞☞☞☞☞

- ▶ *yesterday; wǒ qùnián cái kāishǐ, I started only last year. tā míngtiān cái néng lái, he can't come before tomorrow; wǒ míngnián cái kāishǐ, I will start only next year. cái is placed directly before the verb group.*

- ⑦ Be careful of the negative in the past tense: *méi yǒu* (understood: *tā méi yǒu qù, she did not go*). In this sentence *méi yǒu* is translated into English by *no!* - *Nǐ qù-guo Ribēn ma? have you already been to Japan? - Méi yǒu! No!*

\*\*\*

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 你的爱人现在怎么样?  
Nǐ-de àiren xiànzài zěnmeyàng?
- ② 你现在习惯了吗?  
Nǐ xiànzài xíguàn le ma?
- ③ 我等了两个月了!  
Wǒ děng-le liǎng-ge yuè le!

\*\*\*

## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

- ① I received two letters.  
Wǒ . . . . . -le liǎng-fēng xìn.
- ② Do you speak Chinese well?  
Nǐ Zhōngguó huà shuō de hǎo- . . -hǎo?
- ③ Is your spoken Chinese good?  
Nǐ Zhōngguó huà . . . . de hǎo-bù-hǎo?
- ④ Do you speak good Chinese?  
Nǐ Hànyǔ shuō . . hǎo-bù-hǎo?
- ⑤ Does his wife agree too?  
Tā-de . . . . yě tóngyì ma?
- ⑥ I'll go with you, shall I?  
Wǒ gēn nǐ . . . . qù, hǎo-bù- . . . ?

- ④ 他也在香港吗?  
Tā yě zài Xiānggǎng ma?

## Exercise 1

① How is your wife now? ② Are you accustomed now? ③ I've been waiting for two months! ④ Is he in Hong Kong too?

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

① - shōudào - ② - bù - ③ - shuō - ④ - de - ⑤ - àiren -  
⑥ - yìqǐ - hǎo.

Remember that there is an important rule for the change in tone that affects the third tone: a third tone syllable at the end of a phrase, as an isolated syllable or before a pause, retains its original tone. If, however, it is followed by a first, second or fourth tone syllable, the third tone becomes a "half third tone": the voice descends towards the bass register, but does not come up again to the higher register. And when a third tone is followed by another third tone, the former is pronounced as a second tone. Hello! 你好! nǐ hǎo! is in fact pronounced ní hǎo. Possible! 可以 kěyǐ! is in fact pronounced kényǐ. Elsewhere as in 老王 Lǎo Wáng, Old Wang, 好象 hào-xiàng, it seems that or 已经 yǐjīng, already, the first syllable stays in the lower register and does not come up again.

## 44 第四十四课

### Dì sì-shí-sì kè

### 买东西

#### Mǎi dōngxī

- 1- 这猪肉多少钱?  
Zhè zhū-ròu duōshǎo qián? ①
- 2- 九块钱一斤!  
Jiǔ kuài qián yì jīn! ②
- 3- 好! 来一斤!  
Hǎo! Lái yì jīn!
- 4- 还要别的吗?  
Hái yào biéde ma? ③
- 5- 有没有香肠?  
Yǒu-méi-yǒu xiāngcháng?

### Notes

- ① Here you have a contraction; the classifier is understood: zhéige zhū-ròu, *this pork*. qián, *money, cash*. wǒ méi yǒu qián, *I haven't got any money*; tā yǒu qián, *he's got money*; tā yǒu hēn-duō qián, *he has got lots of money*, but also tā hēn yǒu qián, *he is very rich*.
- ② The Chinese currency is the yuán, officially called rénminbi, *people's currency*, commonly called kuài, the classifier for cash. The kuài is divided into ten máo. The máo is divided into ten fēn. So one kuài equals a hundred fēn. sān kuài sì máo wǔ, *three dollars forty-five cents* is [3 kuai, 4 mao and 5 fen]; liǎng kuài sān máo jiǔ, *three dollars thirty-nine cents*. Sometimes the price is followed by the word qián, *money / cash*. liǎng kuài

## Forty-fourth Lesson 44

### Going Shopping

*buy things*

- 1- How much is this pork?  
*this pig meat how many money?*
- 2- Nine yuan a pound!  
*nine yuan money one pound!*
- 3- Good! Give me one pound!  
*'good! come one pound!*
- 4- Would you like something else?  
*still want other interr.?*
- 5- Have you got any sausages?  
*have neg. have sausage?*

买东西



- ▶ qián, *two dollars*. wǔ fēnqián, *five cents* etc. jīn is half a kilogram, more or less one pound. In China food is often sold by the jīn, Larger quantities are calculated in gōngjīn, *kilograms*.
- ③ biéde, *other*; understood biéde dōngxī, *other things*. Note: biéde rén, *other people*; biéde dìfāng, *other places*; biéde cài, *other dishes*, etc... yǒu-méi-yǒu biéde cài? *are there some other dishes?* méi yǒu biéde bànfǎ, *there is no other way...*

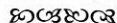


- 6- 有！您看！特别好吃！  
Yǒu! Nín kàn! Tèbié hǎo chī! ④
- 7- 四块八毛一斤！  
Sì kuài bā máo yì jīn!
- 8- 好！来半斤！  
Hǎo! Lái bàn jīn!
- 9- 还要什么？  
Hái yào shénme?
- 10- 不要别的了！一共多少钱？  
Bú yào biéde le! Yìgòng duō shǎo qián?
- 11- 一共十一块四毛！  
Yìgòng shí-yì kuài sì máo!
- 12- 这是二十块！  
Zhèi shì èr-shí kuài!
- 13- 找您八块六毛！  
Zhǎo nín bā kuài liù máo! ⑤
- 14- 好！谢谢你！明天见！  
Hǎo! Xièxie nǐ! Míngtiān jiàn!
- 15- 你忘了？明天关门儿！  
Nǐ wàng le? Míngtiān guān ménr! □

## Notes

- ④ There is a polite form for *you*, in the second person singular. It is pronounced *nín*. The character is made up of *nǐ*, *you*, with the *heart* radical below. *nín guì xìng?* *what is your name?* *your honorable [expensive] name?* ▶

- 6- Yes I have! These are delicious!  
*have! you look! particularly good eat!*
- 7- (it costs) 4.8 yuan a pound!  
*four yuan eight 'mao' one pound!*
- 8- OK! Give me half a pound!  
*good! come half pound!*
- 9- What else would you like?  
*still want what?*
- 10- Nothing else, thank you! How much is that all together?  
*neg. want other le! together how many money?*
- 11- Eleven yuan four mao!  
*together ten-one yuan four mao!*
- 12- Here is twenty yuan!  
*here be two-ten yuan!*
- 13- 8.6 yuan change!  
*seek you eight yuan six mao!*
- 14- Thank you! See you tomorrow!  
*good! thank you! tomorrow see!*
- 15- Are you forgetting? Tomorrow we're closed!  
*you forget le? tomorrow shut door!*



- ▶ ⑤ When giving change the expression used for “Here’s your change!” is “I’m looking for your...[I owe you...]”; for example *zhǎo nín bā máo*, *here’s 80 cents change*. *zhǎo nǐ liǎng kuài!* *here’s your two dollars!* With a large denomination note (a 100 kuài note for example), if the trader cannot give (find) the change, he will say *zhǎo bù kāi!* *I haven’t got change for this!* Word-for-word: [I’m looking, but I can’t open (break into) (this note)!].

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 这个贵不贵?  
Zhèi-ge guì-bú-guì?
- ② 四毛钱一个!  
Sì máo qián yí-ge!
- ③ 买两个吧!  
Mǎi liǎng-ge ba!

\*\*\*

完成句子  
Wánchéng jùzi

- ① Is pork expensive?  
Zhū- ... guì- ... -guì?
- ② You two! What do you want to buy?  
Nǐmen liǎng-wèi! yào ... shénme?
- ③ Is it Sunday tomorrow?  
....., shì-bu-shì líbài tiān?
- ④ Pork is really delicious!  
Zhū ròu ..... hǎo-chī!

You will soon be meeting expressions about money again. Practice using the different terms in Chinese that correspond to dollars or pounds, cents or pennies. Try to become fluent! Practice paying "in Chinese"! Three dollars twenty-seven cents, 三块两毛七

④ 给你八毛!  
Gěi nǐ bā máo!

## Exercise 1

① Is this expensive? ② Four mao each! ③ I'll have two please! ④ Here's eight mao!

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

① - ròu - bú - ② - mǎi - ③ míngtiān - ④ - tèbié -.

sān kuài liǎng máo qī; two dollars seventy-five, 两块七毛五  
liǎng kuài qī máo wǔ; 80 cents is 八毛 bā máo; 22 cents is  
两毛二 liǎng máo èr.

Can you now count up to ten? 一 yī; 二 èr; 三 sān; 四 sì; 五  
wǔ; 六 liù; 七 qī; 八 bā; 九 jiǔ; 十 shí.

And now try up to twenty: 十一 shí-yī; 十二 shí-èr; 十三  
shí-sān; 十四 shí-sì; 十五 shí-wǔ; 十六 shí-liù; 十七  
shí-qī; 十八 shí-bā; 十九 shí-jiǔ; 二十 èr-shí.

Practice as often as you can using the page numbers in transcription, or the lesson numbers that are also written in characters.

45 第四十五课  
Dì sì-shí-wǔ kè

不舒服  
Bù shūfu

- 1- 张先生! 好象外边儿有人!  
Zhāng xiānsheng! Hǎoxiàng wàibiānr yǒu rén! ①
- 2- 谁呀?  
Shéi ya?
- 3- 我是王春的姐姐!  
Wǒ shì Wáng Chūn de jiějie! ②
- 4- 进来! 进来! ... 他怎么了?  
...  
Jìn lái! Jìn lái! ... Tā zěnmē le? ... ③
- 5 我那本书, 带来了吗?  
Wǒ nài běn shū, dài lái le ma? ④

Notes

- ① wàibiān, *outside*, or, with the Beijing accent: wàibiānr. *Inside* is lǐbiān, or lǐbiānr.
- ② Don't forget that the adjectival element always comes **before the noun**, and that **between these two elements** comes the particle de. bàba de didi, *my father's [younger] brother*; didi de bàba, *my younger brother's father*.

Forty-fifth Lesson 45

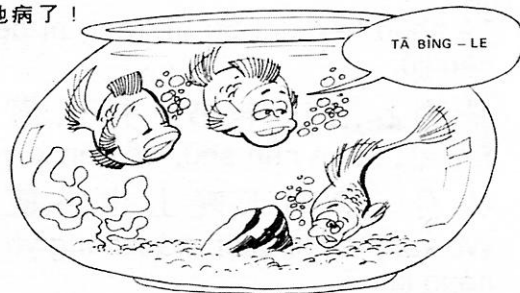
Not Feeling Well

neg. comfortable

- 1 - Mr Zhang! It sounds like there's someone outside!  
*Zhang Mr! seems outside have people!*
- 2 - Who is it?  
*who then?*
- 3 - I'm Wang Chun's older sister!  
*I be Wang Chun de older sister!*
- 4 - Come in! Come in! What's happened to him?  
*enter come! enter come! ... he how le? ...*
- 5 And that book of mine, did you bring it?  
*I that classifier book, bring le interr.?*

他病了!

他病了!



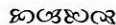
- ③ jìn-lái! *come in!* But compare with nǐ jìn-qù ba! *go in!* In the first case the person speaking is already inside, in the second case both people are still outside.
- ④ Be careful here! The **classifier** for books and magazines is not ge. It's běn, sometimes pronounced with the Beijing accent: běnr. So *two books* is liǎng běn shū.

- 6- 王春今天有点儿不舒服;  
Wáng Chūn jīntiān yǒudiǎnr bù shūfu; ⑤
- 7 他说他不能来。  
tā shuō tā bù néng lái.
- 8- 哦! 他病了!  
ò! Tā bìng le!
- 9- 他有点儿感冒!  
Tā yǒudiǎnr gǎnmào! ⑥
- 10- 没什么关系吧? ... .. 那,  
Méi shénme guānxi ba? ... .. Nà, ⑦
- 11 我那本书, 怎么办呢?  
wǒ nài běnr shū, zěnme bàn ne?
- 12- 他说很对不起, 让你等了  
很久。  
Tā shuō hěn duì bu qǐ, ràng nǐ děng-le  
hěn jiǔ.
- 13- 是啊! ... 这本书, 我很需要!  
Shì a! ... Zhè běn-shū, wǒ hěn xūyào!
- 14- 我看, 他明天晚上也不能来!  
Wǒ kàn, tā míngtiān wǎnshàng yě bù  
néng lái!

## Notes

- ⑤ bù shūfu, *not feeling well, not feeling too good.* But be careful with shūfu, which is used to mean *comfortable, to feel at ease,* etc. zhèr hěn shūfu, bù lěng yě bú rè! *it's very nice here, neither too hot nor too cold!*

- 6- Wang Chun isn't feeling very well today;  
*Wang Chun today have a little neg. comfortable;*
- 7 he says he can't come.  
*he say he neg. able come.*
- 8- Oh! So he's ill!  
*oh! he ill le!*
- 9- He's got a slight flu!  
*he have a little flu!*
- 10- Not too serious, I hope? .. But,  
*neg. what importance suggestion? ... .. but,*
- 11 what about my book?  
*I that class. book, how do ne?*
- 12- He says he's very sorry to have kept you waiting  
so long.  
*he say very sorry, make you wait very long.*
- 13- Indeed! ...I really need that book.  
*be exclam.! ... that class. book, I very need!*
- 14- I don't think he can come tomorrow evening either!  
*I see, he tomorrow evening also neg. able come!*



- ▶ ⑥ gǎnmào, *to have the 'flu'.* shāngfēng, *to have a cold.* tóuténg, *to have a headache.* tòng or téng, *to ache, to be sore.* All these verbs can be preceded by yǒudiǎnr, *slight, I've got a slight...*
- ⑦ Colloquial expression: "I hope this won't have too serious consequences". Do not confuse with méi guānxi! *it doesn't matter, it's not important!*

- 45 15 – 那就等他病好了再说吧！  
Nà jiù děng tā bìng hǎo-le zài shuō ba!  
⑧
- 16 – 还是你去找他吧！  
Háishi nǐ qù zhǎo tā ba! ⑨
- 17 – 那我现在就去吧！  
Nà wǒ xiànzài jiù qù ba!
- 18 我实在很需要那本书！  
Wǒ shízài hěn xūyào nài běn shū!
- 19 – 是啊！我知道！他借了四  
个月，  
Shì a! Wǒ zhīdao! Tā jiè le sì-ge yuè, ⑩
- 20 还没有还给你！太不应该  
了！  
hái méi yǒu huán gěi nǐ! Tài bù yīnggāi  
le! ⑪⑫ □

### Notes

- ⑧ bìng, *an illness*; bìng le, *to be ill*; bìng hǎo le, *to be better, to be cured*. tā bìng de hěn lihai, *he is seriously ill*. tā bìng-le liǎng nián, *he was ill for two years*. tā bìng-le liǎng-ge yuè le! *he's been ill for two months!*
- ⑨ míngtiān zài shuō ba! *we'll talk about it again tomorrow!* chī-le fàn zài zǒu! *we'll go once we've eaten!* xià yí-cì zài tán ba! *we'll discuss it again next time!*
- ⑩ háiishi has several different meanings. As an **interrogative**, it means "... or...?". But here it corresponds to the English turn of phrase: "however it would be better if...", "it would be best to...". Synonymous expression: zuìhǎo háiishi. háiishi nǐ qù ba! *it would be best if you went yourself!* wǒmen háiishi qù ba! *let's go even so!*

- 15 – Well then we'll wait until he's better and talk about it again!  
*that then wait he sick good le again speak suggestion!*
- 16 – The best thing might be to go and look for him yourself!  
*however you go fetch he suggestion!*
- 17 – Well then, I'll go straight away!  
*that I now then go suggestion!*
- 18 I really do need that book!  
*I really very need that class. book!*
- 19 – Yes, I know! He borrowed it four months ago  
*be exclam.! I know! he borrow le four class. month,*
- 20 and he still hasn't returned it! It's too bad!  
*still have neg. return you! too neg. should le!*



- ⑩ jiè means *to lend*, but also... *to borrow*! Here, the context makes the meaning of *to borrow* quite clear. With the meaning *to lend*, the verb uses gěi, *to, for*: nǐ jiè-gěi tā ba! *lend it to him!* nǐ néng-bù-néng jiè-gěi wǒ? *can you lend it to me?* Or, by placing the indirect object at the beginning of the sentence: wǒ gěi tā jiè-le yí wàn kuài qián, *I lent him ten thousand dollars.*
- ⑪ Beware of the character hái, which can have two different pronunciations and two different meanings. When it is read hái, it means *still*, or, here hái as in hái méi yǒu, *not yet*. But when it is read huán, it is the verb meaning *to give back, to return*. There are several tens of characters in Chinese that have two different pronunciations, corresponding to two different meanings. The verb huán takes gěi, *for, to*: huán-gěi wǒ ba! *give it back to me!* míngtiān huán-gěi nǐ! *I'll give it back to you tomorrow!*
- ⑫ Colloquial expression: "What a nerve!", "He's too much!", "That's going too far!", "it's really unbelievable". Word-for-word: [He really *shouldn't* have done that!]. yīnggāi is the verb *must*. You have seen (in lesson 31) its synonym: gāi. In lessons 36 and 37 another useful word: děi, *must*.

练习  
Liànxí

- ① 外边儿有没有人?  
Wàibiānr yǒu-méi-yǒu rén?
- ② 我这几天有点儿不舒服。  
Wǒ zhèi-jǐ tiān yǒu diǎnr bù shūfu.
- ③ 还给我吧!  
Huán gěi wǒ ba!

\*\*\*

完成句子  
Wánchéng jùzi

- ① The best would be if I go too!  
Zuì hǎo . . . . . wǒ yě qù!
- ② He can't come tomorrow evening either.  
Tā . . . . . yě bù néng lái.
- ③ When are you free?  
Nǐ shénme . . . . . yǒu kòng?

*Gradually you will become aware that the grammatical divisions, in Chinese, are not as rigid as in other languages. For example, certain verbs, called "optative verbs" such as "to wish", "to need" can be preceded by "very". So you may also meet 需要 xūyào, to need or 想 xiǎng, to want in the form 很需要 hěn xūyào, to really need or 很想 hěn xiǎng, to want very much.*

- ④ 你也需要这个吗?  
Nǐ yě xūyào zhèi-ge ma?

## Exercise 1

- ① Are there people outside? ② I haven't been very well for the last few days. ③ Give it back please! ④ Do you need that too?

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

- ① - háishi - ② - míngtiān wǎnshàng - ③ - shíhou -.

*From now on the dialogues on the recording are spoken at the speed of a normal conversation, although a little extra time is given for each pause. Do not hesitate to listen to the dialogues several times. If you listen over and over again you will find it easier to assimilate the common turns of phrase, the ones that you meet most often in your study of the dialogues and the exercises.*

46 第四十六课  
Dì sì-shí-liù kè

复习  
Fùxi

- 1- 今天我们大家再复习一次!  
Jīntiān wǒmen dàjiā zài fùxí yí-cì! ①
- 2- 好!  
Hǎo!
- 3- 难不难? ... 学中文难不难?  
Nán-bù-nán? ... Xué zhōngwén nán-bù-nán?
- 4- 你懂不懂? ... 他们懂不懂?  
Nǐ dǒng-bù-dǒng? ... Tāmen dǒng-bù-dǒng?
- 5- 老王去不去? ... 老王去过没有?  
Lǎo Wáng qù-bù-qù? ... Lǎo Wáng qù-guo méi yǒu? ②

Notes

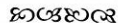
- ① dàjiā, *everyone*. wǒmen dàjiā, *all of us*. zài is the adverb for *again*, which you know in zàijiàn, *goodbye* (again / to see) Be careful not to confuse it with zài, *to be somewhere / at*. Although these two words are pronounced the same way, they are two different words, written with two different characters.
- cì, *time*, is a classifier. yí-cì, *once*; liǎng-cì, *twice*; dì yí cì, *the first time*; dì èr cì, *the second time*. It is the same thing for nián, *year* and tiān, *day*; liǎng nián, *two years*; sān tiān, *three days*. ▶

Forty-sixth Lesson 46

Revision

revise

- 1- Today we are all going to revise once again!  
*today we all again revise one time!*
- 2- Yes!  
*good!*
- 3- Is it difficult? ... Is it difficult to study Chinese?  
*difficult neg. difficult? ... study Chinese difficult neg. difficult?*
- 4- Do you understand? ... Do they understand?  
*you understand neg. understand? ... they understand neg. understand?*
- 5- Is Wang going? ... Has Wang been?  
*old Wang go neg. go? ... old Wang go experiential neg. have?*



- ▶ ② The verbal suffix -guo indicates an experience, like a past perfect. The action has taken place (at least once). In English it is often translated with **already**. In the **negative**, as with the negative of the completed action with le, you must use méi yǒu. The **interrogative** can be expressed with the sentence-final particle ma: nǐ qù-guo ma? *have you already been (there)?* and also with the alternative construction, as for example in nǐ qù-guo méi yǒu qù-guo? *did you already go there?* In general, after méi yǒu it is not necessary to repeat the verb: nǐ qù-guo méi yǒu? Other examples: tā lái-guo méi yǒu? or tā lái-guo ma? *has he come here before?* nǐ chī-guo Zhōngguó-fàn ma? *have you (already) eaten Chinese food?*
- A reply in the negative with the suffix -guo, sometimes includes “never”, “to have never...before” in the English: wǒ méi yǒu qù-guo, *I have never been*; wǒ méi yǒu chī-guo zhèi-ge cài, *I have never had this dish before*.

- 6- 他吃过没有? ... 他来过没有?  
Tā chī-guo méi yǒu? ... Tā lái-guo méi yǒu?
- 7- 你喜欢这本书吗?  
Nǐ xǐhuan zhè běn shū ma? ③
- 8- 他打算什么时候去?  
Tā dǎsuàn shénme shíhou qù?
- 9- 他打算什么时候到中国去?  
Tā dǎsuàn shénme shíhou dào Zhōngguó qù?
- 10- 昨天晚上我见过他!  
Zuótiān wǎnshang wǒ jiàn-guo tā!
- 11- 明天晚上你有没有空?  
Míngtiān wǎnshang nǐ yǒu-méi-yǒu kòng?
- 12- 我跟你一起去, 好不好?  
Wǒ gēn nǐ yìqǐ qù, hǎo-bù-hǎo? ④
- 13- 那本书, 他还没有还给我!  
Nèi-běn shū, tā hái méi yǒu huán-gěi wǒ!
- 14- 请你快点儿说吧!  
Qǐng nǐ kuài diǎnr shuō ba! ⑤
- 15- 好! 今天就到这儿!  
Hǎo! Jīntiān jiù dào zhèr! □

- 6- Has he eaten? ... Has he come?  
*he eat experiential neg. have? ... he come experiential neg. have?*
- 7- Do you like this book?  
*you like this class. book interr.?*
- 8- When is he counting on going?  
*he plan what time go?*
- 9- When is he counting on going to China?  
*he plan what time to China go?*
- 10- I saw him yesterday evening!  
*yesterday evening I see experiential him!*
- 11- Are you free tomorrow evening?  
*tomorrow evening you have neg. have free time?*
- 12- Is it alright if I come with you?  
*I with you together go, good neg. good?*
- 13- He still hasn't given back that book to me!  
*that class. book, he still neg. have return give me!*
- 14- Be quick, tell me then!  
*invite you fast a little say suggestion!*
- 15- Good! That's all for today!  
*good! today then arrive here!*



## Notes

- ③ Remember always to use **the correct classifier!** The most common is *ge*, but there are many others!
- ④ “To go with...” is generally expressed with *gēn... yìqǐ qù*, where *gēn*, *with* and *yìqǐ*, *together* are placed either side of the accompanied person. But this is not essential. It can be *nǐ gēn shuí yìqǐ qù?* *who are you going with?*
- ⑤ *kuài-diǎnr* or *kuài-yìdiǎnr*, *faster, hurry and...* You can also simply use *kuài*, followed by the verb group: *kuài qù ba!* *kuài-diǎnr qù ba!* *nǐ kuài-yìdiǎnr qù ba!* *hurry and go!* *kuài zǒu!* *let's go fast!* *nǐ kuài diǎnr lái!* *come quickly!*



练习  
Liànxí

- ① 请你再说一次吧!  
Qǐng nǐ zàishuō yí-cì ba!
- ② 明天我再来一次吧!  
Míngtiān wǒ zài lái yí-cì ba!
- ③ 快点儿吃吧!  
Kuài diǎn chī ba!
- ④ 你见过他吗?  
Nǐ jiàn-guò tā ma?

\*\*\*

## 完成句子

## Wánchéng jùzi

- ① Who is going with you?  
Shéi ... nǐ yìqǐ qù?
- ② When is he leaving?  
Tā ..... zǒu?
- ③ I haven't any free time today.  
..... wǒ méi yǒu kòng.

Remember that only the study of the characters can avoid the ambiguity caused by the many homonyms in spoken Chinese. Although the grammatical function is a useful clue, you should at least be able to read and therefore distinguish between 再 zài, again / then and 在 zài, at / in / to be at, in a place.

## Exercise 1

- ① Could you say that again please! ② I'll come back again tomorrow ③ Eat up quickly! ④ Have you already met him?

今天就到这儿!



\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

- ① - gēn - ② - shénme shíhou - ③ jīntiān -

In the same way you can compare the characters for 快 kuài, rapid / fast and 块 kuài, unit of currency. Also certain characters that are different on paper, are only distinguishable when spoken by the tone. As in 买 mǎi, to buy and 卖 mài, to sell. These are two important problems that you must make an effort to overcome, by studying the characters and by trying to memorize and reproduce the tones as conscientiously as possible.

47 第四十七课  
Dì sì-shí-qī kè

你属什么?  
Nǐ shǔ shénme?

- 1- 爸爸! 你是哪一年生的?  
Bàba! Nǐ shì nǎ yī nián shēng de?
- 2- 一九六七年  
Yī-jiǔ-liù-qī nián ①
- 3- 那你属什么?  
Nà nǐ shǔ shénme? ②
- 4- 属羊!  
Shǔ yáng!
- 5- “属羊”是什么意思?  
«Shǔ yáng» shì shénme yìsi?
- 6- 中国人有一种习惯,  
Zhōngguó rén yǒu yì-zhǒng xíguàn, ③
- 7 就是用十二个动物来代表年岁。  
jiù shì yòng shí-èr-ge dòngwu lái dài biǎo niánsui. ④

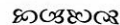
Notes

- ① Years, like telephone numbers, are said figure by figure. 1984 is [one / nine / eight / four / year]: yī-jiǔ-bā-sì-nián. The year 2000: èr-líng-líng-líng nián.

Forty-seventh Lesson 47

What is your Sign?  
you category what?

- 1 - Daddy! What year were you born in?  
daddy! you shì which one year born de?
- 2 - In 1967!  
one-nine-six-seven year!
- 3 - So what sign are you?  
then you category what?
- 4 - I'm a sheep!  
category sheep!
- 5 - What does it mean to belong to sheep?  
“category sheep” be what meaning?
- 6 - The Chinese have a custom,  
Chinese person have one sort habit,
- 7 which is to use twelve animals to represent the years of birth.  
then be with ten-two class. animals come represent year age.



- ② As explained here in the lesson, the **Chinese Zodiac** is a cycle of twelve animals. **Every twelve years**, the same sign comes round, in the order given in the dialogue. Knowing that 1900 was year of the Rat, you can deduce that 1912, 1924, 1936, 1948, 1960, 1972, 1984, 1996, 2008, etc. were also years of the Rat. So it is easy to calculate somebody's sign.
- ③ zhǒng is a classifier, used with any noun, meaning *sort, kind*. nǐ yào nǐ zhǒng? *what sort do you want?* zhèi zhǒng yě bú-cuò! *this sort isn't bad either!* zhèi zhǒng rén, *this kind of person*; wǒ bù xǐhuān nèi zhǒng, *I don't like that sort*.
- ④ yòng, *by means of / with*. The preposition group introduced by yòng is always placed **before the verb group**: tāmen yòng kuàizi chī-fàn, *they eat with chopsticks*; tā yòng máobǐ xiě-zì, *he writes with a brush*.

- 8- 什么动物呢?  
Shénme dòngwu ne?
- 9- 老鼠, 牛, 老虎, 兔子,  
龙, 蛇...  
Lǎoshǔ, niú, lǎohǔ, tùzi, lóng, shé...
- 10 让哥哥接着说!  
ràng gēge jiēzhe shuō!
- 11- 好! 我说: 还有马, 羊, 猴子,  
鸡, 狗, 猪!  
Hǎo! Wǒ shuō: hái yǒu mǎ, yáng, hóuzi,  
jī, gǒu, zhū!
- 12- 比方说你妈妈是属马的!  
Bǐfāng shuō nǐ māma shì shǔ mǎ de!
- 13- 我呢? 我属什么?  
Wǒ ne? Wǒ shǔ shénme?
- 14- 你属狗! 一九九四年是狗  
年!  
Nǐ shǔ gǒu! Yī-jiǔ-jiǔ-sì nián shì gǒu nián!
- 15- 啊呀! 属狗可不太好!  
A ya! Shǔ gǒu kě bú tài hǎo! ⑤ □

⑤ kě is a particle indicating opposition or surprise: zhèi kě hěn hǎo, *that, however, is very good!* nǐ kě bù néng zhèyàng zuò! *you know, you can't behave like that!* nǐ kě huílai le! *ah! there you are!* wǒ kě bù zhīdào! *I however don't know!*

- 8- And which animals?  
*what animal ne?*
- 9- Rat, ox, tiger, rabbit, dragon, snake,  
*rat, ox, tiger, rabbit, dragon, serpent...*
- 10 Let your big brother continue!  
*let older brother continue say!*
- 11- Yes! My turn! Then there's horse, sheep,  
monkey, cockerel, dog and pig!  
*good! I say: still have horse, sheep, monkey, cockerel, dog, pig!*
- 12- For example your mother is the year of the horse!  
*for example say you mummy shi category horse de!*
- 13- And what about me? What am I?  
*I ne? I category what?*
- 14- You're a dog! 1994 was the year of the dog!  
*you category dog! one-nine-nine-four year be dog year!*
- 15- Oh, dear! Being a dog is maybe not that great!  
*exclam. then! category dog but neg. too good!*

你属什么?



## 练习

Liànxí

- ① 你是哪一年开始学中文的?  
Nǐ shì nǎ yī nián kāishǐ xué zhōngwén de?
- ② 他是什么时候来的?  
Tā shì shénme shíhòu lái de?

\*\*\*

## 完成句子

Wánchéng jùzi

- ① He came in 1949.  
Tā shì yī-jiǔ-sì-jiǔ . . . . lái de.
- ② What year is it?  
Jīnnián shì . . . yī nián?
- ③ Which animals do you like?  
Nǐ xǐhuān . . . . . dòngwu?
- ④ Which animal do you like?  
Nǐ . . . . . něi-ge dòngwu?
- ⑤ He doesn't like rabbit meat.  
Tā bù xǐhuān . . . tùzi ròu.

- ③ 一种很好的习惯!  
Yì-zhǒng hěn hǎo de xíguàn!
- ④ 这个东西代表什么?  
Zhèi-ge dōngxi dàibiǎo shénme?

## Exercise 1

- ① What year did you start learning Chinese? ② When did he arrive?  
③ That's a very good habit! ④ What does this represent?

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

- ① - nián - ② - něi - ③ - shénme - ④ - xǐhuān - ⑤ - chī - .

妈妈 māma and 爸爸 bàba are familiar terms of address, but they are also used by adults in China. They not only have the meaning of dad or mummy, but also father and mother. In an everyday conversation two adults can happily use the expression 你爸爸怎么样? nǐ bàba zěnmeyàng? how is your father? or 你妈妈也去吗? nǐ māma yě qù ma? is your mother going too?

Have you noticed how often the following construction is used for accentuation (for verbs in the past) creating the difference between 他昨天来了 tā zuótiān lái-le, he arrived yesterday and 他是昨天来的 tā shì zuótiān lái de, it was yesterday that he arrived.

48 第四十八课  
Dì sì-shí-bā kè

几点?  
Jǐ-diǎn le?

- 1- 今天几号?  
Jīntiān jǐ hào? ①
- 2- 十三号!  
Shí-sān hào!
- 3- 今天星期几?  
Jīntiān xīngqī jǐ? ②
- 4- 星期六!  
Xīngqī liù!
- 5- 现在几点?  
Xiànzài jǐ-diǎn le? ③
- 6- 六点!  
Liù diǎn!

Notes

① jīntiān jǐ-hào or jīntiān shì jǐ-hào? *what's the date today?* (the reply expected is the **day of the month**). jǐ means *how many?* and as a reply, one expects a **figure**. hào means *number*, and is used to express the **days of the month**: sān-shí-yī hào, *the 31st*; yī hào, *the 1st*; èr-shí hào, *the 20th*.

**Months** are expressed with yuè. Before yuè you put yī, *one*, and you have yī-yuè, *January*; èr-yuè means *February*; sān-yuè means *March*, and so on, up until shí-èr-yuè, which means *December*. 1st of April is sì-yuè yī-hào (the month comes before the day).

Forty-eighth Lesson 48

What's the Time?

*how many o'clock le?*

- 1- What's the date today?  
*today how many number?*
- 2- It's the thirteenth!  
*ten-three number!*
- 3- What day of the week is it?  
*today week how many?*
- 4- Saturday!  
*week six!*
- 5- What time is it?  
*now how many o'clock le?*
- 6- Six o'clock!  
*six point!*



② xīngqī means *week*. yī-ge xīngqī, *one week*; liǎng-ge xīngqī, *two weeks*. xīngqī-jǐ? *which day (of the week)?* The **days of the week** are: xīngqī-yī, *Monday*; xīngqī-èr, *Tuesday*; xīngqī-sān, *Wednesday*; xīngqī-sì, *Thursday*; xīngqī-wù, *Friday*; xīngqī-liù, *Saturday*. For *Sunday* there are two synonyms: xīngqī-rì, or xīngqī-tiān (Note that neither use the number seven). (See also lesson 24, note 1).

③ xiànzài jǐ-diǎn le? *what's the time now?* diǎn is used to express **the time on the clock** (see lesson 16). For minutes, you must use fēn. The expression for the time can be followed by the word zhōng, *clock / time*. sān-diǎn liù-fēn or sān-diǎn liù-fēn zhōng, *3 o'clock 6 minutes (on the clock)*, i.e. six minutes past three. Note that in China you do not say "14 hours", but "two in the afternoon": xiàwǔ liǎng-diǎn; not "21 hours", but "nine in the evening": wǎnshàng jiǔ-diǎn, but you will come back to this. Remember that for a **length** of time "one hour" [60 minutes] is xiǎoshí (lesson 25, note 2).

- 7- 好! 谢谢你!  
Hǎo! Xièxie nǐ!
- 8- 这班飞机几点到新加坡?  
Zhèi-bān fēijī jǐ-diǎn dào Xīnjiāpō? ④
- 9- 八点二十五分!  
Bā diǎn èr-shí-wǔ fēn!
- 10- 那快了!  
Nà kuài le!
- 11- 嗯! 不到两个小时!  
Ng! Bú dào liǎng-ge xiǎoshí! ⑤
- 12- 你的表准不准?  
Nǐ-de biǎo zhǔn-bù-zhǔn?
- 13- 可能慢一分钟! ... .. 你的表呢?  
Kěnéng màn yì-fēn zhōng! ... .. Nǐ-de biǎo ne?
- 14- 我没表! 买不起!  
Wǒ méi biǎo! Mǎi-bù-qǐ! ⑥

## Notes

- ④ bān is the classifier for planes, or for other public transport, bus or train for example. zhèi-bān chē, *this bus*.
- ⑤ Exclamation, marking acquiescence: "Hm!" "Yes! That's right!"
- ⑥ Construction called "negative potential": the first verb expresses the action that one would have liked to accomplish. Then you have the expression of impossibility, of incapacity to do some-

- 7- Good! Thank you!  
*good! thank you you!*
- 8- What time does this plane arrive in Singapore?  
*this class. plane how many point arrive Singapore?*
- 9- At eight twenty-five!  
*eight o'clock two-ten-five minute!*
- 10- That's quick!  
*that fast le!*
- 11- Hm! Less than two hours!  
*hm! neg. arrive two class. hour!*
- 12- Is your watch right?  
*your watch exact neg. exact?*
- 13- It may be one minute slow! What about yours?  
*possible slow one minute clock! ... .. your watch ne?*
- 14- I haven't got a watch! I can't afford one!  
*I neg. watch! buy neg. rise!*

两个小时的零钱

两个小时，够吗？



- ▶ thing (with verb elements such as bù-qǐ, bù-liǎo, bù-chéng, which mean *not to succeed / not to be able to...*) Examples: wǒ chī-bù-liǎo, *I won't be able to eat all that*; tā zuò-bù-liǎo, *he won't be able to do it all*; wōmen mǎi-bù-qǐ; tài guì le! *we haven't got enough money for that; it's too expensive!*

## 练习

Liànxí

- ① 明天星期几?  
Míngtiān xīngqī jǐ?
- ② 星期六你有空吗?  
Xīngqī liù nǐ yǒu kòng ma?
- ③ 今天是不是星期二?  
Jīntiān shì-bú-shì xīngqī èr?

\*\*\*

## 完成句子

Wánchéng jùzi

- ① What's the time?  
Xiànzài . . . diǎn le?
- ② Nearly six thirty!  
. . . . liù-diǎn bàn le!
- ③ It's half past eight!  
. . . . . bā-diǎn bàn le!
- ④ At what time are you going?  
Nǐ jǐ . . . . zhōng qù?

- ④ 两个小时，够吗？

Liǎng-ge xiǎoshí, gòu ma?

## Exercise 1

① What day of the week is it tomorrow? ② Will you be free on Saturday? ③ Is it Tuesday today? ④ Will two hours be enough?

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

① - jǐ - ② kuài - ③ xiànzài - ④ - diǎn - .

*Tomorrow you will be studying the last of the 49 lessons of Volume One of Chinese With Ease. At the end of the book you will find an INDEX that will help you refer to the explanations for the various terms you have already studied. You will also find the transcription for all the words in the revision lessons on the recordings. When you have assimilated the first volume, you still have the fifty lessons of Volume Two, as well as the Second Wave exercises for improving your basic spoken Chinese. Good luck, and... we will meet again soon!*

## 49 第四十九课

### Dì sì-shí-jǐu kè

#### REVISION AND NOTES

##### Read the notes again

- 43rd lesson: ①, ④, ⑥ - 44th: ①, ② - 45th: ①, ③ - 46th: ②, ③, ④ - 47th: ①, ② - 48th: ④.

**1 Possessive pronouns** are formed using pronouns, adding the nominalizing particle as a suffix. 我的 wǒ-de, *my, mine*;

你的 nǐ-de, *your, yours* (2nd person singular);

他的 tā-de, *his*;

我们的 wǒmen-de, *our, ours*;

你们的 nǐmen-de, *your, yours*;

他们的 tāmen-de, *their, theirs*;

You can, for personal belongings and kinship ties, leave out the suffix:

我爸爸 wǒ bàba, *my dad, my father*;

我爱人 wǒ àiren, *my wife*

**2 The simple Chinese sentence** always follows the construction: [subject + verb + object]. A piece of advice: don't base Chinese word order on English syntax! *Who is he?* is 他是谁? tā shì shéi? word-for-word [he / to be / who?]; *I am not free tomorrow* is 我明天有事儿 wǒ míngtiān yǒu shìr or 我明天没有空 wǒ míngtiān méi yǒu kòng, [I / tomorrow / neg. / have / free time]. The Chinese turn of phrase is often very different from English, so train yourself **to listen to (and read) the dialogues**, to read them **out loud** as often as you can and you will achieve **progressive memorization** of the phrases with no problem. Saying them will become automatic and they will be engraved in your memory. Then you will be able to improve your conversation by assimilating more vocabulary.

## Forty-ninth Lesson 49

### 3 Homophones

This has often been repeated: there are certain words which, although they are written with different characters, are pronounced in the same way. For example 在 zài, *to be somewhere* and 再 zài, *again*. Pronounced on their own, it is impossible to tell which is which. But when the character is written down, you can distinguish between them. However, all words are always in a **context** when they are spoken. It is the context and the intonation of the phrase that means you can “decode”, without too many misunderstandings; for example 我在这儿 wǒ zài zhèr means *I am here*. As well as these **homophonic** characters, there are also those that are differentiated **only by the tone**. So it is very important to respect the pronunciation of the tone, because a mistake in the tone may turn the sentence into nonsense. Don't confuse 买 mǎi, *to buy* and 卖 mài, *to sell* or 鸡 jī, *cockerel* 记 jì, *to take note* 几? jǐ? *how many*; or even 象 xiàng, *like*, 香 xiāng, *perfumed* and 想 xiǎng, *to think that*. It is true that from the point of view of grammar these words do not have the same function and it would be impossible to meet 鸡 jī, *cockerel* in place of a verb! However, it can arise that two words of the same sort are phonetically close! So make sure you don't say 数年 shù nián, *several years* when you wanted to say 鼠年 shǔ nián, *the year of the Rat*! Don't make the mistake of considering the tones a “secondary objective”. They are a very important phase in your studies. You will frequently be confronted with this matter! Remember: if you don't know the tone you don't know the word!



4 这 zhèi and 那 nài – Do not confuse these two demonstratives. The first indicates an object or a person who is **close** to the speaker. The second indicates something **further away**. So:

那个人很好 nài-ge rén hěn hǎo, *that person is very nice*;  
那天我不舒服 nài tiān wǒ bù shūfu, *I wasn't very well that day*.

As you go, note once again that, Chinese verbs have no conjugations, so that's one less difficulty! Here “that day” indicates a time in the **past**. Remember that sometimes you will meet a demonstrative preceded by a personal pronoun, giving **additional** information about the object in question:

我那本书 wǒ nài-běn shū, *that book of mine*;  
你这个朋友有点儿特别! nǐ zhèi-ge péngyou yǒu diǎnr tèbié! *that friend of yours is a bit weird!*

5 病了 bing le, 不舒服 bù shūfu. 病了 bing le means *to be ill* whereas 不舒服 bù shūfu means simply *not to be (very) well*. These “adjectival verbs”, are placed **just after the subject**. There is no need for the verb “to be”, which can only be followed by a **noun**, or a **nominal clause**.

6 想 xiǎng 要 yào 会 huì 能 néng 可以 kěyǐ 应该 yīnggāi 得 děi

These verbs are called “**auxiliary**” verbs. They can be followed by a complete phrase containing a verb group. They express an ability, a possibility, a wish or a demand. Some of them are very close to each other in meaning:

想 xiǎng or also 很想 hěn xiǎng, *to want (very much) to*;  
我很想到中国去! wǒ hěn xiǎng dào Zhōngguó qù! *I really want to go to China*;

要 yào, *to want* but also sometimes *must*;  
我也要去参观! wǒ yě yào qù cānguān! *I must go on the visit as well!*

要半个小时 yào bàn-ge xiǎoshí, *it will need half an hour*;

会 huì, *to know how to, to be able to do something, having learned*;

我不会开车 wǒ bù huì kāi chē, *I don't know how to drive*.

Not to be confused with

知道 zhīdào, *to know, to have information on*;

我不知道他的地址 wǒ bù zhīdào tā-de dìzhǐ, *I don't know his address*;

他会说中国话 tā huì shuō Zhōngguó huà, *he can / knows how to speak Chinese*.

A second meaning of 会 huì: possibility, *it is possible that...*

他明天不会来 tā míngtiān bú huì lái, *he certainly won't be able to come tomorrow*;

他出去了, 不会在家里 tā chūqu le, bú huì zài jiāli, *he's out, he can't be at home*;

能 néng, *to be able to*;

我也能去 wǒ yě néng qù, *I can go as well*.

能 néng sometimes also expresses the **possibility** in certain conditions:

你能不能来? nǐ néng-bù-néng lái? *are you able to come?*

可以 kěyǐ is close to 能 néng

我不可以还给你! wǒ bù kěyǐ huán-gěi nǐ! *I can't give it back to you!* (not the right, not the possibility to).

得 děi 应该 yīnggāi, means *should, ought to*;

得走了! děi zǒu le! *we have to go, we must go!*

应该还给他! yīnggāi huán gěi tā! *you should give it back!*

Don't confuse all these verbs, but, once again, it is **by using your Chinese** that you will master the subtleties. Be patient! Have trust in *Chinese with Ease!*

7 **Date always comes before the verb**, before the action;

我昨天去了。Wǒ zuótiān qù le. *I went yesterday*.

他明天开始。Tā míngtiān kāishǐ. *He starts tomorrow*.

Once again don't copy English word order, and always follow the rules and constructions given in the notes! For the days of the week,

when they are used to express the date when an action took place or will take place, then they also come before the verb.

他星期三开始。Tā xīngqī sān kāishǐ. *He starts on Wednesday.*

But if the day of the week is the **only element** after the subject, then it will come in the second half of the sentence; it is no longer the date when an action takes place but is part of the complement:

今天星期四。Jīntiān xīngqī sì.

今天是星期四。Jīntiān shì xīngqī sì. *Today it's Thursday.*

(“Thursday” is in the position of complement).

## 8 Pronunciation

Remember that after z, c, s, zh, ch, sh, and r, the letter i is not pronounced. It corresponds to a “non-vowel”, to a “silent e”.

Practice pronouncing the following sounds, respecting the tones.

(These sounds are on the recording)

zǐ cì sī (“silent e”)

zhī chī shì rì zài cài sài zhōu chōu shōu ròu luàn guǎn huàn wǎn (do not stress the final “n”!)

miàn diàn tián liàn (“ee’yen”)

shǔ zhǔ lù hù tǔ (as in “loop”)

## 9 Some colloquial expressions to remember

是吧？

shì ba? *isn't it?*

没关系！

méi guānxi! *it doesn't matter!*

没什么！

méi shénme! *it's nothing! it's not important!*

谁呀？

shéi ya? *who is it? who's there?*

他怎么了？

tā zěnmē le? *how is he? what's happened to him? what's wrong with him?*

算了！

suàn le! *forget! drop it! never mind!*

什么意思？

shénme yìsi? *what does it mean?*

## 10 Write in Chinese (Second Wave exercise)

- 1 You speak Chinese very well.
- 2 How much is that, all together?
- 3 I waited for a very long time.
- 4 I saw him yesterday.
- 5 This is a bad habit.
- 6 What time is it?
- 7 What day of the week is it today?
- 8 What's the date today?

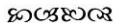
## 11 Translation

- 1 a) 你中国话说得很好！ nǐ Zhōngguó huà shuō de hěn hǎo! or  
b) 你汉语说得很好！ nǐ Hànyǔ shuō de hěn hǎo!  
or  
c) 你中文说得很好！ nǐ Zhōngwén shuō de hěn hǎo!
- 2 一共多少钱？ yí gòng duō shǎo qián?
- 3 a) 我等了半天！ wǒ děng-le bàn tiān! or  
b) 我等了很久！ wǒ děng-le hěn jiǔ! or

- c) 我等了很长时间！ wǒ děng-le hěn cháng shí jiān!  
 4 我昨天见过他。 wǒ zuótiān jiàn-guo tā.  
 5 这个习惯不好！ zhèi-ge xíguàn bù hǎo!  
 6 a) 现在几点了？ xiànzài jǐ-diǎn le? or  
 b) 现在几点钟？ xiànzài jǐ-diǎn zhōng?  
 7 今天星期几？ jīntiān xīngqī jǐ?  
 8 今天是几号？ jīntiān shì jǐ-hào?

### SECOND WAVE

*Tomorrow, with the fiftieth lesson, you will start the **active phase** of your study. When you have studied the dialogue, the notes and the exercises, you will go back to the lessons at the beginning of the book and go over them one by one. With lesson 50 you will review lesson 1. With lesson 51 you will review lesson 2, etc. When you have listened to the lesson and read the dialogues, you will then translate the English text of these first lessons into Chinese, orally and in writing. It may help you to look at the word-for-word translation under the English text. You can correct your mistakes yourself by referring to the Chinese text, the phonetics and the characters. In this way each day you can revise the notions as they were first introduced. It will be a pleasure to meet the vocabulary of the first few days again, and you will be able to consolidate your achievements as you go along. Wishing you all the best for your study of the second volume and the Second Wave!*



## APPENDIX I

### Index for Revision Lessons

Here is the list of words and phrase examples from the revision lessons presented on the recording.

#### LESSON 7

#### 第七课 Dì qī kè

##### Paragraph 2

是 shì, to be

##### Paragraph 3

走 zǒu! let's go! – 不要 bú yào! I don't want any! – 他是谁?  
Tā shì shéi? Who is he?

##### Paragraph 4

不 bù, no, *negative*

##### Paragraph 5

汤 tāng, soup – 菜 cài, dishes – 裤子 kùzi, trousers – 父亲 fùqin, father – 在 zài, at – 书 shū, books – 书 shū, books – 笔 bǐ, pens – 记 jì xi

##### Paragraph 6

有 yǒu, to have, to be, there is – 不 bù, no, *negative* – 没有 méi yǒu, not to have

##### Paragraph 7

是 shì chí sì

### Paragraph 8

累 lèi, (to be) tired – 走 zǒu, to go – 什么? shénme? what? which? – 要 yào, to want – 谁? shéi? who? – 在 zài, at

### Paragraph 10

谁? shéi? who? – 在 zài, at

### Paragraph 11

课 kè, lesson – 第 dì, number – 一课 yī kè, one lesson – 第一课 dì yī kè, lesson one

### Paragraph 12

我认识他。Wǒ rènshi tā. I know him. – 他是谁? Tā shi shéi? Who is he? – 我累。Wǒ lèi. I am tired. – 我饿。Wǒ è. I am hungry.

### Paragraph 14

你买不买书? Nǐ mǎi-bù-mǎi shū? Do you [want to] buy books? – 你买书吗? Nǐ mǎi shū ma? Are you buying books? – 他是我父亲。Tā shi wǒ fùqin. He's my father. – 我不认识他。Wǒ bú rènshi tā. I don't know him. – 你父亲在不在这儿? Nǐ fùqin zài-bú-zài zhèr? Is your father here? – 你要不要汤? Nǐ yào-bú-yào tāng? Would you like some soup?

## LESSON 14

### 第十四课 Dì shí-sì kè

#### Paragraph 1

zhī chí shì zì cǐ sì zhì chì shì rì zì cǐ sì rì  
yao ye you yan ying yan  
jǐ qǐ xǐ zhe zhe zhong xi xiao xie xin xiang xing  
bàn bào bǐ bù piāo péng mǎi méi miàn dà dào dāng diǎn duì

### Paragraph 2

做 zuò, to do – 去 qù, to go – 吃 chī, to eat – 作翻译 zuò fānyì, to do a translation – 去中国 qù Zhōngguó, to go to China – 吃面 chī miàn, to eat noodles – 我很累。Wǒ hěn lèi. I'm very tired. – 这个很贵! Zhèi-ge hěn guì! That's/It's very expensive! – 你爱人很漂亮。Nǐ àiren hěn piàoliang. Your wife is very pretty. – 这儿很冷。Zhèr hěn lěng. It's very cold here.

### Paragraph 3

要 yào, to want, to wish – 会 huì, to know how to – 想 xiǎng, to want to – 去 qù, to go – 去吃饭 qù chī-fàn, to go to eat – 去买菜 qù mǎi cài, to go shopping

### Paragraph 4

不 bù, no, neg. – 没有 méi yǒu, there isn't any – 不, 我不去 bù, wǒ bú qù, no, I'm not going – 不, 不很冷 bù, bù hěn lěng, no, it's not very cold – 我不去 wǒ bú qù, I'm not going

### Paragraph 5

个 ge, classifier – 一个朋友 yí-ge péngyou, a friend – 三个孩子 sān-ge háizi, three children – 一本书 yì-běn shū, a book – 本 běn, classifier (for books) – 一 yī, a, one – 一个朋友 yí-ge péngyou, a friend

### Paragraph 6

吧 ba! go on! – 吃吧! chī ba! eat some! – 作吧 zuò ba! do it then! – 你说吧! nǐ shuō ba! tell me! – 你写吧! nǐ xiě ba! go on then! write it!

### Paragraph 7

的 de, *nominalizer* – 好的书 hǎo de shū, a good book –  
 好的房子 hǎo de fángzi, a nice house – 很漂亮的孩子  
 hěn piàoliang de háiizi, very pretty children – 你朋友 nǐ  
 péngyou, your friend – 你的朋友 nǐ-de péngyou, your friend  
 – 你父亲 nǐ fùqin, your father – 你的父亲 nǐ-de fùqin, your  
 father – 你哥哥 nǐ gēge, your brother – 你的哥哥 nǐ-de  
 gēge, your brother –

### Paragraph 9

你想作什么? Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme? What do you want  
 to do? – 你爱人也住在这儿吗? Nǐ àiren yě zhù-zài  
 zhèr ma? Does your husband live here too? – 你想买什么?  
 Nǐ xiǎng mǎi shénme? What would you like to buy? –  
 你哥哥有几个孩子? Nǐ gēge yǒu jǐ-ge háiizi? How  
 many children has your brother? – 好的书贵吗? Hǎo de  
 shū guì ma? Are good books expensive?

我爱人会说英语,可是她不会写。

Wǒ àiren huì shuō yīngyǔ, kěshì tā bú huì xiě.  
 My wife can speak English but she doesn't know how to write it.

老李也是你的朋友吗?

Lǎo Lǐ yě shì nǐ-de péngyou ma?  
 Is Old Li also your friend?

我不去吃饭,你呢?

Wǒ bú qù chī-fàn. Nǐ ne?  
 I'm not going to eat. What about you?

### Paragraph 10

他 tā, he – 做 zuò, to do – 你 nǐ, you – 好 hǎo, good – 她 tā,  
 she – 吃 chī, to eat – 口 kǒu, mouth – 想 xiǎng, to wish

## LESSON 21

### 第二十一课 Dì èr-shí-yī kè

#### Paragraph 1

jia jiao jie jiu jian  
 qia qiao qie qiu qian  
 xia xiao xie xiu xian xin xing xiang  
 zi ci si zhi chi shi  
 zhe zhe zhen zhong  
 che chu chi ci cai cai chai  
 si si chi chi chi  
 六 liu, six – 天 tian, day

#### Paragraph 2

二十一 èr-shí-yī, twenty-one

#### Paragraph 3

在 zài, to beat/in – 你在这儿等我! Nǐ zài zhèr děng wǒ! Wait  
 for me here! – 他在中国工作。Tā zài Zhōngguó gōngzuò.  
 He works in China. – 住在 zhù zài, to live – 你住在这儿。  
 Nǐ zhù zài zhèr. You live here.

#### Paragraph 4

谁? shéi? who? – 什么? shénme? what? – 吗? ma? *inter-*  
*rogative* – 什么时候? shénme shíhou? when? –

还是? háishi? ...or...? - 怎么? zěnmē? how? - 谁? shéi? who? - 谁去买菜? Shéi qù mǎi cài? Who is going shopping? - 你等谁? Nǐ děng shéi? Who are you waiting for?

#### Paragraph 5

两个孩子 liǎng-ge hái zi, two children - 三个朋友 sān-ge péngyou, three friends - 五个姐姐 wǔ-ge jiějie, five (older) sisters - 七个老师 qī-ge lǎoshī, seven teachers - 两个颜色 liǎng-ge yánsè, two colours - 一个 ge, classifier - 两本书 liǎng-běn shū, two books - 一辆车 yī-liàng chē, one car

#### Paragraph 6

也 yě, also, as well - 也不 yě bù, not... either - 太 tài, too - 不太 bú tài, not too - 很 hěn, very - 一定 yíding, definitely, certainly - 我也去。 Wǒ yě qù. I'm going too. - 我一定告诉她。 Wǒ yíding gàosu tā. I will definitely tell her.

#### Paragraph 7

了 le, sentence-final particle - 不下雨了。 Bú xià-yǔ le. It's not raining any more. - 我不想去看病了。 Wǒ bù xiǎng qù kàn-bing le. I don't want to go to the doctor's any more. - 我现在有工作了。 Wǒ xiànzài yǒu gōngzuò le. I'm in work now. / I've found a job. - 了 le, verbal suffix - 我买了车。 Wǒ mǎi-le chē. I bought a car. - 他吃了两个菜。 Tā chī-le liǎng-ge cài. He's eaten two dishes.

#### Paragraph 8

的 de, nominalizer - 老师的书 lǎoshī de shū, the teacher's book - 我的书 wǒ-de shū, my book

#### Paragraph 10

老王的姐姐还没有车。 Lǎo Wáng de jiějie hái méiyǒu chē. (Old) Wang's sister hasn't got a car yet. - 你的哥哥会不会说中文? Nǐ-de gēge huì-bú-huì shuō zhōngwén? Does your older brother (know how to) speak Chinese? - 你的爱人现在作什么? Nǐ-de àiren xiànzài zuò shénme? What is your wife doing now? - 你要不要骑自行车? Nǐ yào-bú-yào qí zìxíngchē? Do you want to go by bike? - 我还不会说中文。 Wǒ hái bú huì shuō zhōngwén. I can't speak Chinese yet. - 你家里远不远? Nǐ jiāli yuǎn-bù-yuǎn? Is your house far? - 你的孩子是男的还是女的? Nǐ-de hái zi shì nán-de hái-shi nǚ-de? Is your child a boy or a girl?

#### Paragraph 11

六点半 liù diǎn bàn, half past six - 两次 liǎng-cì, twice - 三次 sān-cì, three times - 两个孩子 liǎng-ge hái zi, two children - 几个? jǐ-ge? how many? - 几点? jǐ diǎn? what's the time? - 几岁了? jǐ suì le? how old is he? - 我有事儿。 Wǒ yǒu shìr. I'm busy. - 他没有来。 Tā méi yǒu lái. He didn't come / He hasn't come.

## LESSON 28

### 第二十八课 Dì èr-shí-bā kè

#### Paragraph 1

dāi dāi dāi dāi  
fān fān fān fān

cāi cái cǎi cài  
shī shí shǐ shì  
chī chí chǐ chì

### Paragraph 2

好不好? hǎo-bù-hǎo? don't you agree?

### Paragraph 3

以前 yǐqián, before – 以后 yǐhòu, after – 现在 xiànzài, now – 了 le, suffix – 他很好。Tā hěn hǎo. He is very well/good. – 他以前很好。Tā yǐqián hěn hǎo. He used to be very well/good before. – 我看我的朋友。Wǒ kàn wǒ-de péngyou. I see my friend. – 我看了我的朋友。Wǒ kàn-le wǒ-de péngyou. I saw my friend. – 会 huì, probably – 要 yào, about to, on the point of

### Paragraph 4

快了 kuài le, about to, on the point of – 快要 kuài yào, on the point of – 快要吃饭了 kuài yào chī-fàn le, we can soon start to eat – 明白不明白? míng bai-bù-míng bai? do you understand? – 去不去? qù-bù-qù? shall we go? – 冷不冷? lěng-bù-lěng? is it cold?

### Paragraph 5

是...的 shì... de, structure used for accentuation – 我是学法语的。Wǒ shì xué fǎyǔ de. I study French. / It's French that I'm studying. – 你是学什么的? Nǐ shì xué shénme de? What do you study? – 他是昨天来的。Tā shì zuótiān lái de. It was yesterday that he arrived. – 我是不能去的。Wǒ shì bù néng qù de. I really can't go.

### Paragraph 6

才 cái, only, not until – 他昨天才来呢。Tā zuótiān cái lái ne. He didn't arrive until yesterday. – 我是昨天才告诉他的。Wǒ shì zuótiān cái gàosu tā de. I only told him yesterday. – 我礼拜天才能去。Wǒ lǐbài tiān cái néng qù. I can't go before (next) Sunday. – 他下个月才能到。Tā xiàge-yuè cái néng dào. He can only get there next month.

### Paragraph 7

用 yòng, with, by means of – 跟 gēn, in the company of, with – 在 zài, at, in – 他跟我去。Tā gēn wǒ qù. He's going with me. – 你跟谁去? Nǐ gēn shéi qù? Who are you going with? – 她用筷子吃饭。Tā yòng kuàizi chī-fàn. She eats with chopsticks. – 我用毛笔写汉字。Wǒ yòng máobǐ xiě hànzi. I write Chinese characters with a brush. – 他在法国学法语。Tā zài Fǎguó xué fǎyǔ. He is studying French in France. – 我们在饭馆儿吃饭。Wǒmen zài fànguǎnr chī-fàn. We eat in a restaurant. – 他们在这儿作什么? Tāmen zài zhèr zuò shénme? What are they doing here?

### Paragraph 8

去 qù, to go – 路 lù, road, way

### Paragraph 9

到 dào, to, towards – 他到那儿去。Tā dào nàr qù. He's going there. – 你到哪儿去? Nǐ dào nǎr qù? Where are you going? – 到 dào, to, towards, to arrive – 他到了吗? Tā dào-le ma? Has he arrived?



Paragraph 10

得 de, particle used to introduce manner adverbs -  
他写得很好。Tā xiě de hěn hǎo. He writes very well.  
- 他的朋友 tā-de péngyou, his friend/his friends

Paragraph 11

我是刚来的。Wǒ shì gāng lái de. I just arrived.  
- 再见!再见! zàijiàn! zàijiàn! goodbye! goodbye!  
- 没关系! méi guānxi! never mind! - 好极了!hǎo-jí  
le! perfect!/that's great! - 我忘了!wǒ wàng-le! I forgot!  
- 真的吗? zhēn-de ma? is that true?

Paragraph 13

他昨天才来。Tā zuótiān cái lái. He only arrived yesterday.  
- 他是昨天才来的。Tā shì zuótiān cái lái de. He only arrived yesterday.  
- 他在中国有很多朋友。Tā zài Zhōngguó yǒu hěn duō péngyou. He has lots of friends in China.  
- 快六点半了! Kuài liù diǎn bàn le! It will soon be half past six.  
- 他说得太快。Tā shuō de tài kuài. He speaks/talks too fast.  
- 没关系!我礼拜天也可以! Méi guānxi! Wǒ lǐbài-tiān yě kěyǐ! It doesn't matter! On Sunday I can too!  
- 你能不能告诉我? Nǐ néng-bù-néng gào su wǒ? Can you tell me?  
- 为什么那么贵? Wèishénme nàme guì? Why is it so expensive?  
- 因为很漂亮! Yīnwèi hěn piàoliang! Because it's so pretty/nice!

LESSON 35

第三十五课 Dì sān-shí-wǔ kè

Paragraph 1

买 mǎi, to buy - 卖 mài, to sell -  
mǎi mǎi mǎi mài  
fān fān fān fān  
chī chí chī chí  
shī shí shī shì  
sī sí sī sì  
shì  
sì

Paragraph 2

他学得很快。Tā xué de hěn kuài. He learns very quickly.  
- 她说得不好。Tā shuō de bù hǎo. She doesn't speak well.  
- 他的字写得很漂亮。Tā de zì xiě de hěn piàoliang. He writes characters very well. / His characters are very beautiful.

Paragraph 3

听说 tīng-shuō, to hear say - 觉得 juéde, to find, to feel - 要 yào, to want - 我听说你是中国人。Wǒ tīng-shuō nǐ shì Zhōngguó rén. I hear (that) you are Chinese.  
- 我觉得这个地方不错。Wǒ juéde zhèige dìfang bú-cuò. I find that this place is not bad.

#### Paragraph 4

都 dōu, all, everything – 书很贵。Shū hěn guì. The book/books is/are very expensive. – 书都很贵。Shū dōu hěn guì. The books are all very expensive. – 我懂。Wǒ dǒng. I understand. – 我都懂。Wǒ dōu dǒng. I understand everything.

#### Paragraph 5

很不错 hěn bú-cuò, it's really not bad – 你说什么? Nǐ shuō shénme? What did you say? – 你自己去看吧! Nǐ zìjǐ qù kàn ba! Go and see for yourself! – 还可以! hái kěyǐ! that will do! – 很有意思 hěn yǒu-yìsi, it's very interesting!/it's fun! – 再见! zàijiàn! goodbye! – 是新开的 shì xīn kāi de, it's just opened

#### Paragraph 6

好了!好了! hǎo le! hǎo le! that's enough! – 再见! 再见! zàijiàn! zàijiàn! goodbye! – 走吧!走吧! zǒu ba! zǒu ba! let's go!

#### Paragraph 8

对不起!好象没有水! Duì bu qǐ! Hǎoxiàng méi yǒu shuǐ! I'm sorry! It seems that there's no water! – 我刚才已经说了!Wǒ gāngcái yǐjīng shuō le! I just said so! – 他最近忙不忙? Tā zuìjīn máng-bù-máng? Has he been busy recently? – 时间过得很快! Shíjiān guò de hěn kuài! Time flies! – 这个地方很有意思! Zhè-ge dìfang hěn yǒu-yìsi! This place is really good fun! – 他明天就开始! Tā míngtiān jiù kāishǐ! He's (already) starting tomorrow! – 你的妹妹怎么样? Nǐ-de mèimei zěnmeyàng? How is your little sister?

## LESSON 42

### 第四十二课 Dì sì-shí-èr kè

#### Paragraph 1

你现在作什么?Nǐ xiànzài zuò shénme? What are you doing now? – 你明天作什么? Nǐ míngtiān zuò shénme? What are you doing tomorrow? – 他给你写了两封信。Tā gěi nǐ xiě-le liǎng-fēng xìn. He wrote you two letters. – 我在那儿有很多朋友。Wǒ zài nàr yǒu hěn duō péngyou. I have lots of friends there.

#### Paragraph 2

我想最好还是你去! Wǒ xiǎng zuìhǎo háishi nǐ qù! I think (that) the best would be (that) you go there yourself!

#### Paragraph 3

王老师 Wáng Lǎoshī, Professor Wang – 放假的问题 fàngjià de wèntí, vacation problems – 去的人 qù de rén, the people who are going – 放假的问题 fàngjià de wèntí, vacations problems – 学中文的朋友 xué zhōngwén de péngyou, friends who study Chinese – 学中文的人的朋友 xué zhōngwén de rén de péngyou, the friends of the people who study Chinese

#### Paragraph 4

到旅馆去吧! Dào lǚguǎn qù ba! Let's go to the hotel! – 好吧! hǎo ba! That's OK, isn't it? All right! – 你去吧! nǐ qù ba! go on! – 他们都懂吧? Tāmen dōu dǒng ba? They all understand, don't they? / They understand everything, don't they? – 你累了吧! Nǐ lèi le ba! You are tired now, aren't you!

### Paragraph 5

我有点儿累。Wǒ yǒudiǎnr lèi. I (am) a bit tired. - 累 lèi, (to be) tired - 饿 è, (to be) hungry - 清楚 qīngchu, (to be) clear/ understandable - 晚 wǎn, (to be) late - 可惜 kěxī, (to be a) pity - 是 shì, to be - 我累 wǒ lèi, I'm tired - 他好 tā hǎo, he is good/well - 我渴 wǒ kě, I'm thirsty - 很可惜! hěn kěxī! It's a pity! - 也不错! yě bú-cuò! it's not bad either!

### Paragraph 6

有点儿 yǒudiǎnr, to have a little, to be a little, a little - 有点儿累 yǒudiǎnr lèi, to be a bit tired - 有点儿饿 yǒudiǎnr è, to be a bit hungry - 一下 yí-xià, a little - 等一下! Dēng yí-xià! Wait a bit! - 吃一点儿吧! chī yídiǎnr ba! eat some! / have a little!

### Paragraph 7

请你来! qǐng nǐ lái! please come! - 请 qǐng, to ask someone to do something - 请他来! Qǐng tā lái ba! Invite him to come! / Let him come! - 请你说吧! Qǐng nǐ shuō ba! Speak! / Please say what you think! - 请你到这儿来吃饭! Qǐng nǐ dào zhèr lái chīfàn! Please come and eat here! / I would like to treat you to dinner here! - 他请我。Tā qǐng wǒ. He's inviting me. / He's treating me. - 你请他们坐吧! Nǐ qǐng tāmen zuò ba! Ask them to sit down! / Please tell them to sit down!

### Paragraph 8

意思 yìsi, meaning, interest - 有意思 yǒu yìsi, it's interesting/amusing - 很有意思 hěn yǒu yìsi, it's very interesting, it's very amusing - 没有意思 méi yǒu yìsi, not interesting, not fun - 没意思 méi yìsi, not interesting, not fun - 不很有意思 bù hěn yǒu yìsi, not very interesting,

not much fun - ... 是什么意思? ... shì shénme yìsi? what does... mean? - ... 的意思是... ... de yìsi shì... , ... means... - 这个字的意思是什么? Zhèi-ge zì de yìsi shì shénme? What does this character mean? - 这句话是什么意思? Zhèi-jù huà shì shénme yìsi? What does this sentence mean?

### Paragraph 9

你看! nǐ kàn! look! you see! - 问题很复杂! wèntí hěn fùzá! a very difficult problem! - 就是他! jiù shì tā! that's him! / there he is! 没关系! méi guānxi! it doesn't matter! / never mind! - 你有没有空? nǐ yǒu-méi-yǒu kòng? have you got some spare time? - 完全对了! wánquán duì le! that's exactly so! - 快一点儿! kuài yídiǎnr! hurry up!

### Paragraph 11

他在家写信。Tā zài jiā li xiě-xìn. He's at home writing a letter. - 请你们早一点儿回来! Qǐng nǐmen zǎo yídiǎnr huí-lai! Would you please come back a little earlier! - 王老师同意不同意? Wáng Lǎoshī tóngyi-bù-tóngyi? Does Professor Wang agree? - 说中文的人多不多? Shuō zhōngwén de rén duō-bù-duō? Are there many people who speak Chinese? - 说中国话的人多吗? Shuō Zhōngguó huà de rén duō ma? Are there lots of Chinese speakers? - 写信的人是谁? Xiě-xìn de rén shì shéi? Who is the person writing the letter? - 谁写信? Shéi xiě-xìn? Who is writing a letter? - 你在这儿主要是作什么? Nǐ zài zhèr zhǔyào shì zuò shénme? What is your main activity here? - 你在这里主要是作什么的? Nǐ zài zhèr zhǔyào shì zuò shénme de? What do you mainly do here? - 懂的人不多。Dǒng de rén bù duō. Not many people understand. - 懂的人不很多。Dǒng de rén bù hěn duō. There

are few people who understand. - 他什么时候到法国来? Tā shénme shíhòu dào Fǎguó lái? When is he coming to France?

## LESSON 49

### 第四十课 Dì sì-shí-jū kè

#### Paragraph 1

我的 wǒ-de, my, mine - 你的 nǐ-de, your, yours - 他的, 她的 tā-de, his, her, hers - 我们的 wǒmen-de, our, ours - 你们的 nǐmen-de, your, yours (plural) - 他们的/她们的 tāmen-de, their, theirs - 我爸爸 wǒ bàba, my dad, my father - 我爱人 wǒ àiren, my wife

#### Paragraph 2

他是谁? Tā shì shéi? Who is he? - 我明天有事。Wǒ míngtiān yǒu shìr. Tomorrow I am busy. - 我明天没有空。Wǒ míngtiān méi yǒu kòng. I'm not free tomorrow.

#### Paragraph 3

在 zài, to be (somewhere) - 再 zài, again - 我在这儿。Wǒ zài zhèr. I am here. - 买 mǎi, to buy - 卖 mài, to sell - 鸡 jī, hen, cockerel, chicken - 记 jì, to take note - 几? jǐ? how many? - 象 xiàng, like - 香 xiāng, perfumed/scented/flavour-some - 想 xiǎng, to think that, to wish for - 数年 shù nián, several years - 鼠年 shǔ nián, the year of the Rat

#### Paragraph 4

女 nǚ, this, these - 这 zhè, this, these (*different pronunciation*) - 那 nà, that, those - 那 nài, that, those (*different pronunciation*) - 那个人很好。Nèi-ge rén hěn hǎo. That person

is very nice. - 那天我不舒服。Nèi tiān wǒ bù shūfu. I wasn't very well that day. - 我那本书 wǒ nài-běn shū, that book of mine - 你这个朋友有点儿特别。Nǐ zhèi-ge péngyou yǒudiǎnr tèbié. That friend of yours is a bit weird. -

#### Paragraph 5

病了 bìng le, ill, to fall ill - 不舒服 bù shūfu, to not be/feel well -

#### Paragraph 6

想 xiǎng, to wish, to intend to, to think that - 要 yào, to want - 会 huì, to know how to do something, can - 能 néng, to be able to - 可以 kěyǐ, can, may - 应该 yīnggāi, should, ought to - 得 děi, to have to, must, need - 想 xiǎng, to wish, to intend to, to think that - 很想 hěn xiǎng, to want very much to - 我很想到中国去。Wǒ hěn xiǎng dào Zhōngguó qù. I really want to go to China. - 要 yào, to want, must - 我也要去参观! Wǒ yě yào qù cānguān! I must go (on the visit) as well! - 要半个小时! Yào bàn-ge xiǎoshí! It will need half an hour! / It takes half an hour! - 会 huì, to know how to, to be able to do something, having learned - 我不会开车。Wǒ bú huì kāi-chē. I don't know how to drive. - 知道 zhīdao, to know, to know / have information on - 我不知到她的地址。Wǒ bù zhīdao tā-de dìzhǐ. I don't know her address. - 他会说中国话。Tā huì shuō Zhōngguó huà. He knows how to/can speak Chinese. - 会 huì, it is possible that.../probably/possibly - 他明天不会来。Tā míngtiān bú huì lái. He won't be able to come tomorrow. - 他出去了, 不会在家里。Tā chūqu le, bú huì zài jiāli. He's out, he probably won't be at home - 能 néng, to be able to - 你能不能来? Nǐ néng-bù-néng lái? Are you able/have you permission to come? - 可以 kěyǐ, can, may - 我不可以还给你。Wǒ bù kěyǐ huán-gěi nǐ. I can't give

it back to you. – 得 dēi, to have to, must, need – 应该 yīnggāi, should, ought to – 得走了! Dēi zǒu le! We have to go! I/he/she/you/they must go! – 应该还给他! Yīnggāi huán-gěi tā! You should give it back to him! / You ought to give it back to him! –

#### Paragraph 7

我昨天去了。 Wǒ zuótiān qù le. I went yesterday. – 他明天开始。 Tā míngtiān kāishǐ. He starts tomorrow. – 他星期三开始。 Tā xīngqī-sān kāishǐ. He starts on Wednesday. – 今天星期四 jīntiān xīngqī-sì, today's Thursday – 今天是星期四。 Jīntiān shì xīngqī-sì. It's Thursday today.

#### Paragraph 8

zǐ cì sī  
zhī chī shì rì  
zài cài sài  
zhōu chōu shōu ròu  
luàn guǎn huàn wàn  
miàn diàn tián liàn  
shù zhǔ lù hù tǔ

#### Paragraph 9

是吧? shì ba? isn't it? – 没关系! méi guānxi! it doesn't matter! / never mind! – 没什么! méi shénme! it's nothing! / it's not important! – 谁呀? shéi ya? who is it? / who's there? – 他怎么了? tā zěnme le? how is he? / what's happened to him? / what's wrong with him? – 算了! suàn le! forget it! / drop it! / never mind! – 什么意思? shénme yìsi? what does it mean?

#### Paragraph 11

你中国话说得很好。 Nǐ Zhōngguó huà shuō de hěn hǎo. You speak Chinese very well. – 你汉语说得很好。 Nǐ hànyǔ shuō de hěn hǎo. You speak good Chinese. – 一共多少钱? Yíòng duōshǎo qián? How much is that, all together? – 我等了半天。 Wǒ děng-le bàn-tian. I waited for a very long time/half the day. – 我等了很久。 Wǒ děng-le hěn jiǔ. I waited for a very long time. – 我等了很长时间。 Wǒ děng-le hěn cháng shíjian. I waited for ages. – 我昨天见过他。 Wǒ zuótiān jiàn-guo tā. I saw him yesterday. / I met him yesterday. – 这个习惯不好。 Zhèi-ge xíguàn bù hǎo. This is a bad habit. – 现在几点了? Xiànzài jǐ-diǎn le? What time is it now? – 现在几点钟? Xiànzài jǐ-diǎn zhōng? What time is it now? – 今天星期几? Jīntiān xīngqī-jǐ? What day of the week is it today? – 今天是几号? Jīntiān shì jǐ-hào? What's the date today?

## APPENDIX II

### Index of Characters

The characters introduced in **Volume 1** of *Chinese with Ease* are listed in this index. They are in alphabetical order according to the pinyin conventions. It means that you will find the words starting with the consonant C before the ones starting with a CH, the words starting with the letter Z before the ones starting with Zh, etc.

For the same transcription, the characters are in order of tone (bān, first tone, comes before bàn, fourth tone). Characters with the same tone are placed in order of the number of their strokes. The number refers to the lesson where the character appears and/or is explained.

313 • 314

## A

ā	啊	.....	23, 32
ā ya	啊呀	.....	36, 37
àiren	爱人	.....	30
ān	安	.....	25
ānjing	安静	.....	9

## B

bā	八	.....	8
Bālí	巴黎	.....	25
ba	吧	.....	12, 24
bái	白	.....	introduction
bǎi	百	.....	introduction
bǎihuò shāngdiàn	百货商店	.....	24
bān	班	.....	48

bàn	办	.....	12
bān	半	.....	16
bàn-ge xiǎoshí	半个小时	.....	25
bàn jīn	半斤	.....	44
bāo jiǎozi	包饺子	.....	39
bào	报	.....	3
Běi Dà	北大	.....	27
běijí	北极	.....	introduction
Běijīng	北京	.....	33
Běijīng huà	北京话	.....	33
béiji	背脊	.....	introduction
běn	本	.....	45
bǐ	笔	.....	3
bǐfāng shuō	比方说	.....	37, 47
bǐjiào	比较	.....	33
biàn fàn	便饭	.....	39
biǎo	表	.....	48
biéde	别的	.....	44

to handle, to manage, to do	.....	12
half	.....	16
half an hour	.....	25
half a pound	.....	44
to make Chinese dumplings	.....	39
newspaper	.....	3
Beijing University	.....	27
north pole	.....	introduction
Beijing, Peking	.....	33
Beijing dialect	.....	33
back ( <i>noun</i> )	.....	introduction
classifier	.....	45
brush, pen, pencil	.....	3
for example	.....	37, 47
comparatively, rather	.....	33
simple meal, potluck	.....	39
wristwatch	.....	48
another, others	.....	44

bing hǎo le .....	病好了
bing le .....	病了
bù .....	不
bú cuò .....	不错
bú jiàn de .....	不见得
bú shì... ma? .....	不是... 吗?
bù shūfu .....	不舒服
bú yòng .....	不用
bù zhǐ .....	不止
bù zhǐ le ba! .....	不止了吧!

### C

cái .....	才
cài .....	菜
cānguān .....	参观
cì .....	次
chá .....	茶

recovered (from an illness) .....	45
ill .....	18, 45
<i>negative</i> ; no, not .....	1
not bad .....	29, 43
uncertain, unlikely .....	38
isn't it...? .....	23
unwell, out of sorts .....	45
no need to .....	39
without stopping, not only .....	37
much more than that! .....	37

only .....	23, 28, 43
cooked dish, vegetables .....	2
to visit .....	40
order, time, number .....	19, 32
tea .....	30

cháng .....	长
chē .....	车
Chén .....	陈
chéng .....	城
chénglì .....	成立
chī .....	吃
chī fàn .....	吃饭
Chóngqing .....	重庆
chōu .....	抽
chōu yān .....	抽烟
chū-le shìr .....	出了事儿
chūqu .....	出去
Chūn .....	春

long .....	25
vehicle, car, bus .....	15, 25
Chen (family name) .....	27
town .....	24
to establish, to found .....	40
to eat .....	8
to eat .....	8, 19
Chongqing (city of) .....	32
to draw out .....	23
to smoke a cigarette or a pipe .....	23
something has happened .....	19
to go outside .....	10
Chun (family name), springtime .....	45

### D

dǎ diàn huà .....	打电话
dà .....	大
dàgài .....	大概

to make a telephone call .....	39
large, big, tall .....	12
probably .....	25



dàjiā	大家
dǎpái	打牌
dǎ qiáo pái	打桥牌
dǎsuàn	打算
dǎtīng	打听
dāi	待
dài	带
dàibiǎo	代表
dàifu	大夫
dānwèi	单位
dāng lǎoshī	当老师
dāngrán	当然
dào	到
dào	到
de	的
de	得
de shíhòu	的时候

everyone, everybody	.....25, 33, 37
to play cards	.....31
to play bridge	.....31
to intend to	.....32, 43
to enquire	.....19, 29
to stay	.....17
to lead, to take someone somewhere	.....38
to represent	.....47
doctor	.....38
organization, works unit	.....40
to be a teacher	.....27
of course	.....11, 13, 27, 30
to go to, towards	.....24, 25
to arrive, to reach	.....25, 48
particle, nominalizer	.....12, 23
particle introducing a manner clause	.....27, 30, 35, 43
when, at the time when	.....41

děi	得
děng	等
dìfāng	地方
dì yí cì	第一次
dìdì	弟弟
diàn	点
diànnǎo	电脑
dìng hǎo	定好
Dōngjīng	东京
dōngxi	东西
dǒng	懂
dòngwù	动物
dōu	都
duì	对
duì	对
duì bu qǐ	对不起
duì... hěn shú xī	对...很熟悉
duì le	对了

must, to have to	.....36, 37
to wait	.....16, 19, 29
place, location	.....32
the first time	.....38
younger brother	.....11
o'clock	.....16, 48
computer	.....40
to fix a date, to reserve, to settle	.....32
Tokyo	.....43
thing	.....32
to understand	.....33, 37, 40
animal	.....47
all, everything	.....24, 25, 33
exact, correct, yes	.....9, 22
towards, to	.....38
excuse me	.....5, 19
to know... well	.....38
that's true, that's right	.....32

duō ..... 多  
 duōcháng? ..... 多长?  
 duōcháng shíjiān? ..... 多长时间?  
 duō dà le? ..... 多大了?  
 duō jiǔ? ..... 多久?  
 duō shǎo? ..... 多少?  
 duō shǎo qián? ..... 多少钱?

numerous ..... 16  
 how much? what length? ..... 25  
 how long? (time) ..... 25  
 what age? how old? ..... 20, 34  
 how long? (time) ..... 43  
 how much? how many? ..... 44  
 how much? (price) ..... 44

### E, F

è ..... 饿  
 ěrzi ..... 儿子  
 èr ..... 二  
 Fǎguó ..... 法国  
 Fǎguó rén ..... 法国人  
 fǎwén ..... 法文  
 fānyì ..... 翻译  
 fǎnzhèng ..... 反正

hungry ..... 1  
 son, boy ..... 43  
 two ..... 2  
 France ..... 27  
 Frenchman ..... 27  
 French language ..... 27  
 to translate ..... 13  
 anyway ..... 25

fàn ..... 饭  
 fànguǎnr ..... 饭馆儿  
 fāngfǎ ..... 方法  
 fāngbiàn ..... 方便  
 fāngbiān ..... 方言  
 fāngyán ..... 房子  
 fàngjiǎ ..... 放假  
 fēicháng ..... 非常  
 fēn ..... 分  
 fēn ..... 分  
 fēnr ..... 份儿  
 fēng ..... 封  
 fùqīn ..... 父亲  
 fūren ..... 夫人  
 fùxí ..... 复习  
 fùzá ..... 复杂  
 fùzé ..... 负责

cooked rice, food ..... 2  
 restaurant ..... 24  
 method ..... introduction  
 convenient ..... 33  
 dialect ..... 37  
 house, room ..... 9  
 to be on holiday, to go on holiday ..... 36  
 extremely ..... 38  
 cent ..... 44  
 minute ..... 48  
 classifier ..... 41  
 classifier ..... 36  
 father ..... 27  
 wife ..... 13, 30  
 to revise ..... 34  
 complicated ..... 37  
 to take charge of ..... 40

## G

gāi.....	该	各种各样的
gān.....	干	个
gǎn mào.....	感冒	给
gāng.....	刚	跟
gāng cái.....	刚才	跟...一起
gāoxīng.....	高兴	工厂
gǎo.....	搞	公共汽车
gàosu.....	告诉	
gēge.....	哥哥	
gè-zhǒng-gé-yàng de.....	各种各样的	
ge.....	个	
gěi.....	给	
gēn.....	跟	
gēn... yìqǐ.....	跟...一起	
gōngchǎng.....	工厂	
gōnggòng qìchē.....	公共汽车	

to have to, must.....	31
dry.....	introduction.....45
to have flu.....	45
just (recent past).....	22
just (recent past).....	29
happy, contented, joyful.....	38
to do.....	40
to tell, to inform.....	18, 25
older brother.....	11, 43
all sorts of.....	24
classifier (general).....	11, 12
to give; to, for.....	36
with.....	26
together.....	24
factory.....	32, 40
bus.....	25

## H

gōngyuán.....	公园
gōng zuò.....	工作
gǒu.....	狗
gòu.....	够
guài-bù-dé.....	怪不得
guān.....	关
guān ménr.....	关门儿
guānxi.....	关系
Guāngdōng huà.....	广东话
Guǎngzhōu.....	广州
guì.....	贵
guì xìng?.....	贵姓?
guo.....	过
guò.....	过

hái.....	还
hái bù.....	还不

park.....	17
to work, work.....	40
dog.....	47
enough, sufficient.....	16
not surprising, no wonder.....	27
to close.....	44
it's closed, we're closing.....	44
connection, relationship, implication.....	45
Cantonese (language).....	33
Canton.....	37
expensive.....	12
what is your family name?.....	18
experiential verbal marker.....	4, 8, 19, 26, 38
to go by.....	30

still, yet.....	16
yet.....	24

hái kěyǐ .....	还可以!
hái méi yǒu .....	还没有
hái shì .....	还是
hái shì... ba .....	还是...吧
háizi .....	孩子
hànyǔ .....	汉语
hànzì .....	汉字
hǎo .....	好
hǎo chī .....	好吃
hǎo jí le! .....	好极了!
hǎo jiǔ .....	好久
hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn le .....	好久不见了
hǎo le! .....	好了!
hǎoxiàng .....	好象
hē .....	喝
hé .....	和
hěn .....	很

that'll do .....	33
not yet .....	45
or .....	20
it would be best if .....	17, 45
child .....	11
Chinese language .....	13
Chinese characters, ideograms .....	33
good, well, kind .....	1
delicious .....	44
excellent! .....	22
it's been a long time since .....	39
long time no see .....	39
that's it, that's enough .....	31
it seems .....	17, 29, 43
to drink .....	30
and, with .....	33
very .....	9

hěn duō .....	很多
hěn jiǔ .....	很久
hěn xūyào .....	很需要
hěn yǒu yìsī .....	很有意思
Hóng .....	红
hóng chá .....	红茶
hóuzi .....	猴子
hòutiān .....	后天
huā .....	花
huà .....	话
huàbào .....	画报
huà jù .....	话剧
huàxué .....	化学
huānyíng .....	欢迎
huán .....	还
huán gěi .....	还给
huàn .....	换

very many, very much .....	16, 24
very long (time) .....	45
to really need .....	45
very interesting, fun .....	22
Hong (family name), red .....	26
black tea .....	30
monkey .....	47
the day after tomorrow .....	30
to spend, flower .....	33
word, language .....	33
magazine .....	5
theater play, modern drama (not sung) .....	41
chemistry .....	22
welcome .....	22
to return, to give back .....	45
to give back to .....	45
to change .....	25

huí jiā ..... 回家  
 huí lái ..... 回来  
 huì ..... 会  
 huǒchē ..... 火车

J

jī ..... 鸡  
 jīchǎng ..... 机场  
 jí ..... 极了  
 jǐ ..... 几  
 jǐ diǎn? ..... 几点?  
 jǐ diǎn le? ..... 几点了?  
 jǐ-ge? ..... 几个?  
 jǐ hào? ..... 几号?  
 jǐ suì le? ..... 几岁了?  
 jiā ..... 家  
 jiālǐ ..... 家里

to return home ..... 15  
 to come back ..... 18, 30, 43  
 it is probable that; to know how to ..... 13, 15, 23, 27  
 train, locomotive ..... 16

chicken, cockerel ..... 47  
 airport ..... 38  
 extremely ..... 22, 39  
 several ..... 18  
 what time? at what time? ..... 16  
 what time is it? ..... 48  
 how many? ..... 11  
 what number? what's the date today? ..... 48  
 how old? ..... 20, 34  
 home, house, family ..... 15  
 at home ..... 17, 36

jiàn ..... 见  
 jiǎng ..... 讲  
 jiāo ..... 教  
 jiǎozi ..... 饺子  
 jiào ..... 叫  
 jiàoshòu ..... 教授  
 jiē ..... 接  
 jiějie ..... 姐姐  
 jiè ..... 借  
 jièshào ..... 介绍  
 jīn ..... 斤  
 jīntiān ..... 今天  
 jīntiān wǎnshàng ..... 今天晚上  
 jìn ..... 近  
 jìn chéng ..... 进城  
 jìn lái ..... 进来  
 jìn qù ..... 进去

to see, to meet ..... 14  
 to talk, to discuss, to tell ..... 37  
 to teach ..... 27  
 Chinese dumplings ..... 39  
 to call, to be called ..... 18  
 professor ..... 38  
 to seek, to go to meet ..... 24  
 older sister ..... 11, 18, 45  
 to lend, to borrow ..... 45  
 to present, to introduce ..... 38  
 pound (weight) ..... 44  
 today ..... 17, 29  
 this evening ..... 29  
 near, nearby ..... 41  
 to go into town ..... 24  
 to enter, to come in ..... 45  
 to enter, to go in ..... 41

jiǔ	几
jiǔ	久
jiù	就是!
jiù shì!	就是!
jù	句
juéde	觉得
juéding le	决定了

### K

kāi	开
kāi chē	开车
kāi shǐ	开始
kāi yǎn le	开演了
kàn	看
kàn bìng	看病
kàn-kan	看看
kě	可

nine	.....9
long time	.....38
just, as soon as, then, well then	.....25, 29
absolutely! exactly!	.....31
phrase, classifier	.....37
to feel that, to find that	.....32
decided	.....26

to open	.....29, 32
to drive a car	.....15
to begin	.....33
the show has begun	.....41
to see, to read	.....23
to go to the doctor	.....18
to look at, to take a look at	.....24
but	.....23, 26

ké	可
ké	渴
kěnéng	可能
kěshì	可是
kěxī	可惜
kěyǐ	可以
kéndìng	肯定
kòng	空
kuài	快
kuài	块
kuài dào	快到
kuài yào... le	快要...了
kuàizi	筷子
kùzi	裤子

### K

la	啦
lái	来

but in that case	.....27
to be thirsty	.....30
possible, probable	.....19, 26, 29
but	.....16
too bad, pity	.....41
to be able	.....24, 30
surely, certainly	.....27, 43
void, spare time	.....39
fast; soon; to hurry	.....16, 44
unit of currency	.....16, 22, 30
to approach	.....37
soon, near future	.....26
chopsticks	.....23
trousers, pants	.....3

exclam.	.....38
to come, to arrive, to take	.....19, 38, 44

lái wǎn le .....	来晚了
lǎo .....	老
lǎobǎn .....	老板
lǎogōng .....	老公
lǎohǔ .....	老虎
lǎopó .....	老婆
Lǎo Shě .....	老舍
lǎoshī .....	老师
lǎoshǔ .....	老鼠
le .....	了
lèi .....	累
Lǐ .....	李
liànxí .....	练习
lǐbài-tiān .....	礼拜天
lìshǐ .....	历史
liǎr .....	俩儿
liǎng-ge .....	两个

to come late .....	19
old .....	6, 26
boss .....	36
husband .....	30
tiger .....	47
wife .....	13, 30
Lao She .....	41
teacher .....	18, 27
rat .....	47
verb suffix, sentence-final particle .....	16, 19
tired .....	1
Li (family name), pear .....	6
exercise .....	1
Sunday .....	24
history .....	22
two (people) .....	26
two .....	20

líng .....	零
líng .....	另
liú .....	六
liù diǎn bàn .....	六点半
lěng .....	冷
lóng .....	龙
lù .....	路
lùyīnjī .....	录音机
lǚguǎn .....	旅馆

zero .....	38
other .....	36
six .....	6
half past six .....	16
cold .....	10
dragon .....	47
road, route .....	24
tape recorder .....	33
hotel .....	29, 38

## M

māma .....	妈妈
máfan .....	麻烦
mǎ .....	马
Mǎ Lǎoshī .....	马老师
ma .....	吗
mǎi .....	买

mother, mummy .....	36
to bother, troublesome .....	39
horse .....	47
Mr Ma (teacher) .....	18
interrogative .....	1
to buy .....	3

mǎi-bù-qǐ .....	买不起
mǎi dōngxī .....	买东西
mǎimài .....	买卖
mǎnyì .....	满意
màn .....	慢
máng .....	忙
máo .....	毛
méi .....	没
méi guānxi .....	没关系
méi yǒu .....	没有
méi yǒu lái .....	没有来
méi yǒu shìr .....	没有事儿
méi yǒu yìsī .....	没有意思
mèimei .....	妹妹
mén .....	门
ménr .....	门儿
mén .....	们

not be able to buy .....	48
to do the shopping, to go to market .....	32, 44
trade, business .....	32
satisfied, contented .....	43
slow .....	38, 48
busy .....	30
ten cents, fur .....	44
<i>negative (past tense)</i> .....	30
it doesn't matter .....	24, 38
to not have .....	5
not come, not arrived .....	19
to have free time .....	39
not interesting, boring .....	17, 22
younger sister .....	11
door, gate .....	25, 44
door, gate .....	44
<i>suffix to mark the plural</i> .....	11

méngwén .....	蒙文
miàn .....	面
miànbāo .....	面包
míng bai .....	明白
míngnián .....	明年
míngtiān .....	明天

Mongolian language .....	37
noodles .....	8
bread .....	2
to understand .....	28
next year .....	32, 43
tomorrow .....	15, 30, 39

## N

nǎ? .....	哪?
nǎr? .....	哪儿?
nà .....	那
nà jiù .....	那就
nàme .....	那么
nàr .....	那儿
nán .....	难
nán-de .....	男的
nán háizi .....	男孩子

which? .....	47
where? .....	10, 24, 27
well then .....	3
well in that case .....	29, 30
so; so... (with <i>adjective</i> ) .....	27, 31
over there .....	24, 27
difficult .....	33
masculine, boy .....	20
boy, son .....	20



nán	南
Nánjīng Lù	南京路
ne	呢
néi?	哪?
něi-ge?	哪个?
Nèiměng	内蒙
néng	能
nǐ	你
nǐmen	你们
nì	腻
nián	年
niánsul	年岁
ng!	嗯!
nín	您
niú	牛
nǚ-de	女的
nǚ háizi	女孩子

south	南	24
Nanking Road	南京路	24
well then	呢	13, 27, 31
which?	哪?	40
which?	哪个?	40
Inner Mongolia	内蒙	37
to be able	能	37
you	你	1, 11, 24
you ( <i>plural</i> )	你们	24
fatty	腻	introduction
year	年	38
age	年岁	47
hm! indeed!	嗯!	48
you ( <i>polite</i> )	您	18, 44
cattle, cow	牛	47
feminine, girl	女的	20
girl, daughter	女孩子	20

### O, P

ò!	哦!
ó?	哦?
pà	怕
pái	排
pàng	胖
péngyou	朋友
piào	票
piàoliang	漂亮
pǔtōnghuà	普通话

oh!	哦!	4, 27
oh really?	哦?	30
to fear, to be frightened of	怕	19
rank, line	排	41
fat, chubby	胖	43
friend	朋友	11
ticket	票	16
beautiful, pretty	漂亮	12
Mandarin (the common tongue)	普通话	introduction

### Q

qī	七
qīzi	妻子
qí	骑
qíguài	奇怪
qìchē	汽车

seven	七	7
wife	妻子	13, 21, 30
to mount, to go by, ride	骑	15
strange, weird	奇怪	23
car	汽车	25

qiān.....	千
qián.....	钱
qīngchū.....	清楚
qíng kuàng.....	情况
qǐng.....	请
qù.....	去
qù shì.....	去世

## R

ràng.....	让
rè.....	热
rèqíng.....	热情
rén.....	人
rénjia.....	人家
rén kǒu.....	人口
rènshi.....	认识
Rìběn.....	日本

thousand.....	introduction
money.....	16
clear, clearly.....	18, 20, 27, 41
situation.....	38
to invite, to ask of someone.....	25, 38
to go.....	8
to die.....	41
to allow.....	45
hot.....	29
warm, friendly.....	22
people.....	22
people, the others, one.....	27
population.....	37
to know, to be acquainted with.....	4, 22
Japan.....	43

rìwén.....	日文
rìzi.....	日子
róngyì.....	容易
ròu.....	肉
rúguǒ... jiù.....	如果...就

## S

sān.....	三
sì.....	四
Sìchuan.....	四川
sījī.....	司机
sǐ le.....	死了
suàn le.....	算了
sui.....	岁
shāngdiàn.....	商店
shàng.....	上
shàng chē.....	上车
shàng-ge yuè.....	上个月

Japanese language.....	43
days, time.....	30
easy.....	33
meat.....	44
if... in that case.....	38
three.....	3
four.....	4
Sichuan province.....	32
driver.....	38
dead.....	41
too bad.....	20
year, age.....	20, 30
shop.....	24
to go up, to go, on, upon.....	25
to get in the car, in the bus.....	25
last month.....	33

Shànghǎi .....	上海
Shànghǎi huà .....	上海话
shǎo .....	少
shé .....	蛇
shéi, shuí .....	谁
shénme? .....	什么?
shénme shíhòu? .....	什么时候?
shénme yìsi? .....	什么意思?
shēng .....	生
shēngchǎn .....	生产
shēnghuó .....	生活
shēngrì .....	生日
shēngyì .....	生意
shěng .....	省
shí .....	十
(de) shíhòu .....	(的) 时候
shíjiān .....	时间

Shànghai .....	32
Shànghai dialect .....	37
few, a little .....	introduction
serpent, snake .....	47
who, whoever .....	4, 25
what? which? .....	2, 22, 27
when? .....	18
what meaning? .....	40
born, to be born .....	47
production .....	40
life, to live .....	43
birthday .....	30
trade, affairs .....	32
province .....	32
ten .....	10, 16
when .....	41
time .....	16, 25, 31, 33

shízài .....	实在
shì .....	是
shì a! .....	是啊!
shì... de .....	是...的
shìr .....	事儿
shōudào .....	收到
shū .....	书
shūbāo .....	书包
shūdiàn .....	书店
shūfu .....	舒服
shúxī .....	熟悉
shǔ .....	属
shuǐ .....	水
shuō .....	说
shuō huà .....	说话
shuōmíngshū .....	说明书

really, truly .....	45
to be; yes indeed .....	4, 9, 32, 33
that's true! .....	31
construction giving emphasis .....	22, 36
affair, business, things .....	17, 19
to receive .....	43
book .....	3
attaché case, satchel .....	12
bookshop .....	5
comfortable, in good shape .....	18, 45
familiar, well-known .....	38
category, to belong .....	47
water .....	29, 30
to speak, to say .....	13
to talk .....	33
programme, instruction manual .....	41

## T

tā	他	he	4
tā	她	she	9, 11, 13
tāmen	他们	they ( <i>masculine</i> )	11
tài	太	too much, too	8
tàitai	太太	wife	13
tán	谈	to chat, to talk, to discuss	39
tāng	汤	soup	2
tèbié	特别	particularly, special	44
tiān	天	day	18
Tiānānmén	天安门	Gate of Heavenly Peace	25
tīng	听	to listen, to hear	27
tīng-shuō	听说	to hear that	33
tóngyì	同意	to agree	36
tóngzhì	同志	comrade	39
tùzi	兔子	rabbit, hare	47

## W

wài biān	外边儿	outside	45
wánquán	完全	completely	40
wánchéng jùzi	完成句子	to complete the sentences	1
wǎn	晚	evening, late	10, 31, 41
wǎn le	晚了	late	19
wǎngzhàn	网站	website	40
wǎnshàng	晚上	in the evening	29
Wáng	王	Wang (family name), emperor	6
wàng le	忘了	forgotten	20, 25
wèishénme?	为什么?	why?	27, 32
wèi!	喂!	hallo!	39
wèi	位	<i>classifier for spectators and guests</i>	38
wèn	问	to ask	20, 25, 32
wèntí	问题	question, problem	36, 39
wǒ	我	I	1
wǒ fùqin	我父亲	my father	4

wài biān	外边儿	outside	45
wánquán	完全	completely	40
wánchéng jùzi	完成句子	to complete the sentences	1
wǎn	晚	evening, late	10, 31, 41
wǎn le	晚了	late	19
wǎngzhàn	网站	website	40
wǎnshàng	晚上	in the evening	29
Wáng	王	Wang (family name), emperor	6
wàng le	忘了	forgotten	20, 25
wèishénme?	为什么?	why?	27, 32
wèi!	喂!	hallo!	39
wèi	位	<i>classifier for spectators and guests</i>	38
wèn	问	to ask	20, 25, 32
wèntí	问题	question, problem	36, 39
wǒ	我	I	1
wǒ fùqin	我父亲	my father	4

wǒ kàn .....	我看 .....
wǒmen .....	我们 .....
wú xiàndiàn .....	无线电 .....
wǔ .....	五 .....

## X

Xīzàng .....	西藏 .....
xíguàn .....	习惯 .....
xǐhuan .....	喜欢 .....
xià .....	下 .....
xià bānr .....	下班儿 .....
xià chē .....	下车 .....
xià-ge yuè .....	下个月 .....
xiàwǔ .....	下午 .....
xià-yǔ .....	下雨 .....
xiān .....	先 .....
xiānsheng .....	先生 .....

in my opinion .....	32, 45
we .....	19
wireless .....	40
five .....	5

Tibet .....	37
habit, to be in the habit .....	43, 47
to like .....	12
to come down, to go down .....	25
to end the day's work, to knock off work .....	30
to get off the bus, train .....	25
next month .....	26, 33
afternoon .....	25
to rain .....	17
first of all .....	25, 41
husband, Mr, sir .....	9, 30, 36

xianzài .....	现在 .....
xiāngcháng .....	香肠 .....
Xiānggǎng .....	香港 .....
xiǎng .....	想 .....
xiǎng bu dào .....	想不到 .....
xiǎo .....	小 .....
xiǎoshí .....	小时 .....
xiě .....	写 .....
xiěfǎ .....	写法儿 .....
xiě-xìn .....	写信 .....
xiě-zì .....	写字 .....
xièxie .....	谢谢 .....
xīn .....	新 .....
Xīnjiāpō .....	新加坡 .....
xīn kāi de .....	新开的 .....
xìn .....	信 .....
xīngqī .....	星期 .....

now .....	20, 27, 33
sausage .....	44
Hong Kong .....	43
to wish that, to think that .....	8, 12, 16, 27
unexpected .....	32
small .....	12
hour .....	25
to write .....	13, 33
handwriting .....	33
to write (a letter) .....	36
to write .....	33
thank you, no thank you .....	23, 30
new .....	10, 29
Singapore .....	48
recently opened .....	29
letter .....	36
week .....	48

xīngqī-èr	星期二
xīngqī-jī?	星期几?
xīngqī-liù	星期六
xīngqī-rì	星期日
xīngqī-sān	星期三
xīngqī-sì	星期四
xīngqī-tiān	星期五
xīngqī-wǔ	星期六
xīngqī-yī	星期日
xíng	行
xínglǐ	行李
xìng	姓
xíngkuī	幸亏
xūxi	休息
xūyào	需要
xué	学
xuésheng	学生

Tuesday	48
what day of the week?	48
Saturday	48
Sunday	48
Wednesday	48
Thursday	48
Sunday	48
Friday	48
Monday	48
to function, OK, agreed	8
luggage	16
family name, surname, to be called	18
luckily	9
rest, to rest, interval	41
to need	45
to study, studies	22, 27
student	27

## Y

ya	呀
yánjiū	研究
yánjiū suǒ	研究所
yánsè	颜色
yǎn xì	演戏
yáng	羊
yāo	一要
yào	也要
yě	也
yě bù	也不
yě méi yǒu	也没有
yí	一
yíding	一定
yí-ge	一个
yígòng	一共
yí xià	一下

exclam.	4, 26
research, to research	40
research institute	40
colour	12
to perform a play	41
sheep	47
one	39
to wish; to be obliged to; near future	2, 33, 26
also	3
neither, not... either	3
not... either	17
one	1
certainly, surely	18, 25
one	12
altogether	44
a little	17, 29, 38

yíyàng	一样
yǐhòu	以后
yǐqián	以前
yǐjīng	已经
yí	亿
yídiǎnr	一点儿
yíhuìr	一会儿
yìqǐ	一起
yìsī	意思
yīnwèi	因为
yīngāi	应该
yīngwén	英文
yīngyǔ	英语
yòng	用
yóu	由
yóujúú	邮局
yǒu	有

same, identical	33
after, afterwards	25
before	22
already	27
one hundred million	37
a little	13, 30, 41
in a while	20
together	24
sense, meaning	40
because	27, 32
to have to, to be obliged to	31, 45
English language	38
English language	13
to use, with	23, 28, 33, 47
by, through, because of	40
post office	5
to have, to possess	5

yǒudiǎnr	有点儿
yǒu kòng	有空
yǒu rén	有人
yǒu shì	有事
yǒu yìsī	有意见
yǔ	雨
yuánliàng	原谅
yuǎn	远

to be a little	38, 42
to have free time	39
there are people who	31
to be busy	17
to be interesting, amusing	17, 22, 31
rain	17
to excuse, to pardon	38
far, far away	38

## Z

zài	在
zài	在
zài	再
zài-bù-zài?	在不在?
zàijiàn	再见
zhàngfu	丈夫
zàngwén	藏文

to be at, at	6, 11, 27
to be living	41
once again, then	25, 45
is s/he there?	6
goodbye	25, 28, 31
husband	30
Tibetan language	37

zǎo	早
zǎo yìdiǎnr	早一点儿
zěnmé...?	怎么...?
zěnmé bàn?	怎么办?
zěnmé le?	怎么了?
zěnmé yàng?	怎么样?
zì	字
zìjǐ	自己
zìxíngchē	自行车
zǒu	走
zuì	最
zuì hǎo	最好
zuìjìn	最近
zuótiān	昨天
zuò	做; 作
zuò	坐
zuò sān zhàn	坐三站

early	.....	36
a little earlier	.....	36
how?	.....	12, 25, 27
what can be done?	.....	12
what's the matter?	.....	36, 45
how is he? what is he doing?	.....	30, 33
Chinese character	.....	33
oneself	.....	29
bicycle	.....	15
to go, to leave, to walk	.....	1
the most	.....	30, 36
best	.....	19, 36
recently	.....	30
yesterday	.....	26
to do	.....	13
to sit down, to be seated	.....	25
to take (the bus) for three stops	.....	25

zuò mǎimài	做买卖
zuò shēngyì	做生意
zuò zhě	作者
zhàn	站
Zhāng	张
zhāng	张
zhàngfu	丈夫
zhǎo	找
zhè	这
zhèlǐ	这里
zhème ge rén	这么个人
zhèr	这儿
zhè(ì) yàng	这样
zhèi-ge	这个
zhèi-ge rén	这个人
zhèi-ge yue	这个月
zhè-jǐ tiān	这几天

to be in business, to trade	.....	32
to trade	.....	32
author	.....	41
station, stop	.....	25
Zhang (family name)	.....	26
classifier, long	.....	41
husband	.....	30
to look for, to give change	.....	39, 44
that, this	.....	20
here	.....	16
that sort of person, he's like that!	.....	26
here	.....	5
like so, that way, thus	.....	33, 36, 41
this, that	.....	32
this person	.....	22
this month	.....	33
these days	.....	18



zhēn	真的
zhēnde	真的
zhèngzài	正在
zhī	枝
zhīdào	知道
zhǐ	只
zhǐ	止
zhōng	钟
Zhōngguó	中国
Zhōngguó rén	中国人
zhōngwén	中文
zhōng wǔ	中午
zhǒng	种
zhǔyào	主要
zhù	住
zhù-zài	住在
zhuānyè	专业
zhǔn	准

really, truly	23
true	20, 26, 27
adverb expressing a progressive state	36
classifier	23
to know	24, 27, 36
only	38
to stop	37
clock, time	48
China	11
Chinese	11
Chinese language	13
midday	39
kind, sort	24, 47
important	40
to live, to dwell	43
to live in, at	9
speciality	22
punctual, exact	48

## APPENDIX III

### Useful Words

Characters	Pinyin	Meaning
出口	chūkǒu	exit
入口	rùkǒu	entrance
海关	hǎiguān	customs
银行	yínháng	bank
人民银行	Rénmín Yínháng	People's Bank
邮局	yóujú	post office
医院	yīyuàn	hospital
公园	gōngyuǎn	park
博物馆	bówùguǎn	museum
办公室	bàngōngshì	office
报亭	bàoting	newspaper stand
书店	shūdiàn	bookstore
新华书店	Xīnhuá Shūdiàn	Xinhua bookstore
外文书店	Wàiwén Shūdiàn	foreign languages bookstore
信托商店	xìntuō shāngdiàn	secondhand shop
浴池	yùchí	public baths
厕所	cèsuǒ	restroom, WC
男	nán	man
女	nǚ	woman
百货商店	bǎihuò shāngdiàn	department store
饭馆	fànguǎn	restaurant
电影院	diànyǐngyuàn	cinema
剧院	jùyuàn	theater
飞机场	fēijīchǎng	airport

售票处	shòupiàochù	ticket office
信筒	xìntǒng	letter box
北京	Běijīng	Peking, Beijing
上海	Shànghǎi	Shanghai
广州	Guǎngzhōu	Canton
香港	Xiānggǎng	Hong Kong
台湾	Táiwān	Taiwan
...大街	... dàjiē	avenue
地址	dìzhǐ	address
姓名	xìngmíng	last name and given name
茶	chá	tea
酒	jiǔ	alcoholic drink
冰棍	bīnggùn	ice cream
糕点	gāodiǎn	cake
包子	bāozi	steamed bun
饺子	jiǎozi	dumplings
面	miàn	noodles
元	yuán	unit of currency
角	jiǎo	1/10 of unit of currency



分	fēn	cent
斤	jīn	one pound, 500gr
公斤	gōngjīn	kilo
北京日报	Běijīng Rìbào	Peking Daily
人民日报	Rénmín Rìbào	People's Daily
此路不通	cǐ lù bù tōng	cul de sac
请勿吸烟	qǐng wù xī yān	no smoking
止步	zhǐ bù	stop
请走东门	qǐng zǒu dōng mén	please use east door
电子计算机	diǎn zǐ jì suàn jī	electronic computer
打字机	dǎzì jī	typewriter
电视机	diànshìjī	television (monitor)
录音带	lù yīn dài	cassette, tape
明信片	míng xìn piàn	post card
普遍	pǔbiàn	common, usual
收音机	shōu yīn jī	radio
拖拉机	tuō lā jī	tractor
休息	xiūxi	to rest



## APPENDIX IV

### Table of Radicals with Their Meaning

The list below includes the 214 traditional radicals as defined in the dictionary compiled in the reign of the Emperor KANGXI in the XVIIth century. Classical and simplified forms are both presented.

Sometimes a radical can have several forms, depending on whether it appears on the left of the character, or on the right, or to the top or at the bottom. The different variants of a same radical are given under the same number.

\*\*\*

#	RADICAL	MEANING
1	一	horizontal
2	丨	vertical
3	丶	dot
4	丿	left curve
5	乙	celestial stem no.2
6	丨	vertical hook
7	二	two
8	冫	lid
9	人 亻	person

10	儿	son
11	入	enter
12	八	eight
13	冂	limits
14	宀	cover
15	冫	ice
16	几	table, several
17	凵	container
18	刀 刂	blade
19	力	strength
20	勹	embrace
21	匕	spoon
22	匚	basket
23	匚	box
24	十	ten
25	卜	divination
26	卩 卮	seal, stamp
27	厂	cliff
28	厶	private

29	又	again
30	口	mouth
31	口	surrounding wall
32	土 土	earth
33	士	scholar
34	夕	walking slowly
35	夕	overtaking, follow
36	夕	evening
37	大	big
38	女	woman
39	子 子	child, terrestrial branch no.1
40	宀	roof
41	寸	inch, thumb
42	小	small
43	尢 兀	broken or curved leg
44	尸	corpse
45	屮	sprout
46	山	mountain
47	川 川	river

48	工	work
49	己	self
50	巾	fabric, napkin
51	干	dry
52	么	small, young
53	广	shelter
54	辶	walk
55	卅	two hands (bottom of character)
56	弋	shooting
57	弓	bow
58	彘 彘 彘	pig head
59	彡	hair, feather
60	彳	step
61	心 忄 忄	heart
62	戈	axe
63	户	family
64	手 扌	hand
65	支	branch
66	支 攴	whip, strike, letters

67	文	language
68	斗	bushel
69	斤	pound
70	方	square
71	无 无	negative
72	日	sun
73	曰	speak
74	月	moon
75	木	wood
76	欠	lack
77	止	stop
78	歹 歹	bad, inauspicious
79	父	halberd
80	母 (母)	not (mother)
81	比	compare
82	毛	hair, fur
83	氏	clan
84	气	gas
85	水 氵 水	water

86	灬 火	fire
87	爪 爪	claw
88	父	father
89	爻	crossing two times
90	爿	bed
91	片	slice
92	牙	tooth
93	牛 牝	ox
94	犬 犴	dog
95	玄	black, dark
96	玉 王	jade
97	瓜	gourd
98	瓦	tile
99	甘	sweet
100	生	born
101	用	use
102	田	field
103	疋	bolt of cloth
104	疒	illness

105	𠂇	two hands above
106	白	white
107	皮	skin
108	皿	vessel
109	目	eye
110	矛	spear
111	矢	arrow
112	石	stone
113	示 礻	show, rites
114	𠂇	animal stamping the earth
115	禾	cereals
116	穴	cavern
117	立	standing
118	竹 𦵏	bamboo
119	米	rice
120	糸 纟	silk
121	缶	crook, vessel
122	网	net
123	羊	sheep

124	羽	feather
125	老	old
126	而	then
127	耒	plough
128	耳	ear
129	聿	brush
130	肉 月	meat, flesh
131	臣	minister
132	自	self
133	至	arrive
134	白	mortar
135	舌	tongue
136	舛	lying side by side
137	舟	boat
138	良	simple, honest
139	色	color
140	艹 艹	grass
141	虍	tiger
142	虫	insect

143	血	blood
144	行	walk
145	衣 衤	clothing
146	西	west
147	見 见	see
148	角	horn
149	言 讠	word
150	谷	valley
151	豆	bean
152	豕	pig
153	豸	animal
154	貝 贝	shell
155	赤	vermilion
156	走 走	walk
157	足 足	foot
158	身	body
159	車 车	vehicle
160	辛	bitter, celestial stem no.8
161	辰	morning, terrestrial branch no.10

162	辵	walk
163	阝	ear (on the right)
164	酉	wine jar, terrestrial branch no.10
165	采	pluck, pick
166	里	hamlet
167	金 钅	metal, gold
168	長 长 彡	long
169	門 门	door
170	阝	ear (on the left)
171	录	reaching, catching
172	隹	short tail bird
173	雨	rain
174	青 专	green, blue
175	非	not
176	面	face, noodles
177	革	leather
178	韋 韦	tanned leather
179	韭	chives
180	音	sound

181	頁 页	page
182	風 风	wind
183	飛 飞	fly
184	食 食 个	food
185	首	head
186	香	perfume
187	馬 马	horse
188	骨	bone
189	高	high
190	髮	hair
191	鬥	battle
192	鬻	offering spirits
193	鬲	vessel
194	鬼	spirit, ghost
195	魚 鱼	fish
196	鳥 鸟	bird
197	鹵	saltpeter

ㄏㄨㄛˋ

198	鹿	deer
199	麥 麦	wheat
200	麻	hemp
201	黄	yellow
202	黍	millet
203	黑	black
204	紉	needlework
205	黽 黽	frog
206	鼎	tripod
207	鼓	drum
208	鼠	rat
209	鼻	nose
210	齊 齐	gathering
211	齒 齿	tooth
212	龍 龙	dragon
213	龟	turtle
214	龠	flute

ㄏㄨㄛˋ



## APPENDIX V

### Grammar Memo

- In Chinese, the **verb**, like all the other parts of speech, is invariable. It has only one written form and one pronunciation. There is no inflexion to indicate the plural or the person; there is no conjugation or tense.

\*\*\*

- Suffixes** (了 *le*, 过 *guò*...) are used to indicate the mode (accomplished, unaccomplished). **Adverbs** are used to indicate the tense (past, recent past, present, future...).
- Adverbs** always come before the verb. **Verbal suffixes** (like 了 *le* and 过 *guo*) always come after the verb group.
- The verb *to be*, as the copula for introducing a noun, is 是 *shì* (pronounced in this case with the neutral tone: *shì*).

这是书。      Zhè shì shū.      This is a book.  
他是老师。      Tā shì lǎoshī.      He is a teacher.

- The negative for verbs and verbal adjectives is 不 *bù*. One exception: the verb *to have*, 有 *yǒu*, which takes 没有 *méi yǒu*.
- 没有 *méi yǒu* is also used to form the negative of the “unaccomplished” action in the past:

我没有去。      Wǒ méi yǒu qù.      I didn't go.  
他没有吃饭。      Tā méi yǒu chī-fàn.      He hasn't eaten.

不难。      Bù nán.      It's not difficult.  
我不懂。      Wǒ bù dǒng.      I don't understand.

- NEVER use 是 *shì* in front of a verbal adjective. **Verbal adjectives** follow the subject directly; although they may be preceded by adverbs:

他很累。      Tā hěn lèi.      He is very tired.  
我不舒服。      Wǒ bù shūfu.      I don't feel very well.  
书不太贵。      Shū bú tài guì.      Books are not too expensive.

- The subject is generally at the beginning of the sentence, the basic construction being subject/verb/object.

他吃米饭。      Tā chī mǐfàn.      He eats rice.  
我不买书。      Wǒ bù mǎi shū.      I don't buy books.

- The **interrogative** particle 吗 *ma* is always placed at the end of the sentence.

你去吗？      Nǐ qù ma?      Are you going?  
他来过吗？      Tā lái-guo ma?      Did he already come here?  
好吃吗？      Hǎo-chī ma?      Is it good (to eat)?

- To ask a question, it is also possible to use the **alternative** construction: verb/negative/verb:

你去不去？      Nǐ qù-bú-qù?      Are you going?  
他来不来？      Tā lái-bù-lái?      Is he coming?  
好吃不好吃？      Hǎo-chī bù hǎo-chī?      Is it good (to eat)?  
你们累不累？      Nǐmen lèi-bù-lèi?      Are you tired?

- Manner adverbs are introduced using the particle 得 *de* placed after the verb:

你写得很好      Nǐ xiě *de* hěn hǎo.      You write well.  
 他说得太快      Tā shuō *de* tài kuài.      He talks too fast.  
 她吃得太多      Tā chī *de* tài duō.      She eats too much.

- If the verb is followed by an object, then the verb must be repeated before the manner adverb:

他开车开得太快  
 Tā kāi chē kāi *de* tài kuài.  
 He drives (his car) too fast.

你吃饭吃得很快  
 Nǐ chī-fàn chī *de* tài kuài.  
 You eat too quickly.

他做中国饭做得很好  
 Tā zuò Zhōngguó fàn zuò *de* hěn hǎo.  
 He cooks Chinese food very well.

- Indirect objects always come before the verb:

我跟你去  
 Wǒ gēn nǐ qù.  
 I'm going with you.

他在那儿作什么？  
 Tā zài nàr zuò shénme?  
 What does he do there?

他们从哪儿来？  
 Tāmen cóng nǎr lái?  
 Where do they come from?

他用筷子吃饭  
 Tā yòng kuàizi chī-fàn.  
 He eats with chopsticks.

- The adjectival clause, followed by the nominalizer 的 *de* always comes before the noun:

昨天买的书  
 zuótiān mǎi *de* shū  
 the books bought yesterday [yesterday / to buy / *de* / books]

今天的报  
 jīntiān *de* bào  
 today's paper [today / *de* / newspaper]

这个人的名字  
 zhèi-ge rén *de* míngzi  
 this person's name [this / person / *de* / name]

- The **possessive** is expressed in the same way, with the nominalizer 的 *de* between the possessor and what is possessed:

我的书      wǒ-*de* shū      my book  
 老师的书      lǎoshī *de* shū      the teacher's book

我的太太的书  
 wǒ-*de* tàitai *de* shū  
 my wife's book

中国人的习惯  
 Zhōngguó rén *de* xíguàn  
 the habits of the Chinese

- Remember to always insert the **classifier** between the cardinal number or the demonstrative adjective and the noun:

三个人	sān-ge rén	three people
三本书	sān-běn shū	three books
这本书	zhè-běn shū	this book
这三本书	zhèi sān běn shū	these three books

- The most common classifier is 个 *ge* but there are also many others.
- Exceptions: 年 *nián year*, 天 *tiān day*, and words meaning “one time”, for example 次 *cì*.

三年	sān nián	three years
两天	liǎng tiān	two days
十次	shí cì	ten times

- A place is always introduced by a preposition. To express the place where the speaker is, the place where the action takes place, use 在 *zài*:

我在 中国 学汉语

Wǒ zài Zhōngguó xué hànyǔ.  
I study Chinese in China.

他在 北京 教历史

Tā zài Běijīng jiāo lì shǐ.  
He teaches history in Beijing.

- The place where something comes from is introduced using 从 *cóng*.

他从 日本 来

Tā cóng Riběn lái.  
He comes from Japan.

你们从 哪儿 来？

Nǐmen cóng nǎr lái?  
Where do you come from?

我从 美国 来

Wǒ cóng Měiguó lái.  
I come from the States.

- The destination is introduced using 到 *dào*.

我到 上海 去

Wǒ dào Shànghǎi qù.  
I'm going to Shanghai.

我到 市场 去 买东西

Wǒ dào shì chǎng qù mǎi dōngxi.  
I'm going to the market, to do the shopping.

These few basic rules, explained in more detail in the notes in the lessons, and in the revision lessons, should allow you to comprehend Chinese sentence construction. One last piece of advice: always respect the word order as scrupulously as possible. You will be understood all the better for it!

APPENDIX VI

Index of Combined Sounds in Chinese

	a	o	e	-i	er	ai	ei	ao	ou	an	en	ang	eng	ong
b	ba	bo				bai	bei	bao		ban	ben	bang	beng	
p	pa	po				pai	pei	pao	pou	pan	pen	pang	peng	
m	ma	mo				mai	mei	mao	mou	man	men	mang	meng	
f	fa	fo					fei		fou	fan	fen	fang	feng	
d	da		de			dai	dei	dao	dou	dan		dang	deng	dong
t	ta		te			tai		tao	tou	tan		tang	teng	tong
n	na		ne			nai	nei	nao	nou	nan	nen	nang	neng	nong
l	la		le			lai	lei	lao	lou	lan		lang	leng	long
z	za		ze	zi		zai	zei	zao	zou	zan	zen	zang	zeng	zong
c	ca		ce	ci		cai		cao	cou	can	cen	cang	ceng	cong
s	sa		se	si		sai		sao	sou	san	sen	sang	seng	song

	a	o	e	-i	er	ai	ei	ao	ou	an	en	ang	eng	ong
zh	zha		zhe	zhi		zhai	zhei	zhao	zhou	zhan	zhen	zhang	zheng	zhong
ch	cha		che	chi		chai		chao	chou	chan	chen	chang	cheng	chong
sh	sha		she	shi		shai	shei	shao	shou	shan	shen	shang	sheng	
r			re	ri				rao	rou	ran	ren	rang	reng	rong
j														
q														
x														
g	ga		ge			gai	gei	gao	gou	gan	gen	gang	geng	gong
k	ka		ke			kai	kei	kao	kou	kan	ken	kang	keng	kong
h	ha		he			hai	hei	hao	hou	han	hen	hang	heng	hong
a	o	e		er	ai	ei	ao	ou	an	en	ang	eng		

	i	ia	iao	ie	iu	ian	in	iang	ing	iong
b	bi		biao	bie		bian	bin		bing	
p	pi		piao	pie		pian	pin		ping	
m	mi		miao	mie	miu	mian	min		ming	
f										
d	di		diao	die	diu	dian			ding	
t	ti		tiao	tie		tian			ting	
n	ni		niao	nie	niu	nian	nin	niang	ning	
l	li	lia	liao	lie	liu	lian	lin	liang	ling	
z										
c										
s										

	i	ia	iao	ie	iu	ian	in	iang	ing	iong
zh										
ch										
sh										
r										
j	ji	jia	jiao	jie	jiu	jian	jin	jiang	jing	jiong
q	qi	qia	qiao	qie	qiu	qian	qin	qiang	qing	qiong
x	xi	xia	xiao	xie	xiu	xian	xin	xiang	xing	xiong
g										
k										
h										
y	yi	ya	yao	ye	you	yan	yin	yang	ying	yong

	u	ua	uo	uai	ui	uan	en	uang	eng	ü	üe	uan	un
b	bu												
p	pu												
m	mu												
f	fu												
d	du		duo		dui	duan	dun						
t	tu		tuo		tui	tuan	tun			nü	nüe		
n	nu		nuo			nuan				lü	lüe		
l	lu		luo			luan	lun						
z	zu		zuo		zui	zuan	zun						
c	cu		cuo		cui	cuan	cun						
s	su		suo		sui	suan	sun						

	u	ua	uo	uai	ui	uan	un	uang	eng	ü	üe	uan	un
zh	zhu	zhua	zhuo	zhuai	zhui	zhuan	zhun	zhuang					
ch	chu	chua	chuo	chuai	chui	chuan	chun	chuang					
sh	shu	shua	shuo	shuai	shui	shuan	shun	shuang					
r	ru	rua	ruo		ruì	ruan	run						
j										ju	jue	juan	jun
q										qu	que	quan	qun
x										xu	xue	xuan	xun
g	gu	gua	guo	guai	gui	guan	gun	guang					
k	ku	kua	kuo	kuai	kui	kuan	kun	kuang					
h	hu	hua	huo	huai	hui	huan	hun	huang					
wu	wa	wo	wai	wei	wan	wen	wang	weng	wu	yue	yuan	yun	

## APPENDIX VII

### A Short Bibliography

*Jingxuan Ying-Han Han-Ying Cidian / Concise English-Chinese Chinese-English Dictionary.* Hong Kong; Beijing: Oxford University Press and Commercial Press, 1986.

*Xinhua Zidian*, revised edition. Beijing: Commercial Press, 1998.

*Mandarin Phrasebook*, 4<sup>th</sup> edition. Melbourne; Oakland; London (England); Paris (France): Lonely Planet 2001.

*Pocket English-Chinese (Pinyin) Dictionary / Wang Liangbi (Editor), Zhu Yuan (Editor), Ren Yongchang (Editor).* Boston: Cheng and Tsui, 1983.

Charles N. LI, Sandra A. THOMPSON. *Mandarin Chinese, a functional Reference Grammar.* Berkeley; Los Angeles; London: University of California Press, 1981.

*Longman English-Chinese (hanyu pinyin) photo dictionary.* Beijing: Waiwen chubanshe, 1996.

CAO Xianzhuo, SU Peicheng. *Chinese Characters*, Chinese edition. Beijing: Beijing University Press, 1999.

*New Longman Chinese Dictionary.* Beijing: China Youth Press, 2001.

*Xiandai Hanyu Cidian.* Beijing: Commercial Press, 2002.

And for more go to [www.chinabooks.com](http://www.chinabooks.com)

*Published in India under licence by*

**GOYAL Publishers & Distributors Pvt. Ltd.**

86 U.B. Jawahar Nagar, Delhi – 110007, India.

Tel : 011 - 23852986, 23858362 Fax: 23850961

**E-mail: [goyal@goyalsaab.com](mailto:goyal@goyalsaab.com)**





The World leader in self study language courses

If you think learning a foreign language must necessarily rhyme with tiresome work, the first volume of **Chinese with Ease** is here to show you a different way.

This volume of 49 lessons is the first part of a two-volume package: altogether there are 105 lessons in **Chinese with Ease**.

Providing you with Chinese characters and with Pinyin (the official transcription of Chinese characters), it will soon enable you to read and speak mandarin Chinese.

Do you remember how you learned to speak as a child? Your learning of Chinese will be based on the same mechanisms, in two distinct phases:

- the passive phase where you simply listen and repeat, throughout the two volumes.
- the active phase starting with the second volume, when you will begin to create your own sentences.

In volume 1 of **Chinese with Ease**, the lively dialogues taken from everyday events in China will not only immerse you in Chinese culture, but will also familiarize you with modern Chinese vocabulary, phrases and sentences. You will only need half an hour of study each day.

Regularity and motivation are the keys to your success!

Want to learn to write Chinese as well? **Writing Chinese with Ease** is the book for you, explaining how to write the characters stroke-by-stroke.

FOR SALE IN THE INDIAN SUBCONTINENT ONLY



4 CASSETTES



4 AUDIO CD'S

Professionally made by native speakers, audio recordings (tapes or CDs) of all the lessons and exercises can be purchased separately – and they're a valuable aid.

Their title is 易读汉语

Published under license by  
GOYAL Publishers & Distributors (P)Ltd.  
86 U.B., Jawahar Nagar, Delhi-110007, India  
Tel.: 011-23852986, 23858362 Fax: 23850961  
E-mail: goyal@vsni.com

ISBN: 81-8307-045-0



9 788183 070454

Book+4CDs Rs. 795/-  
Only Book Rs. 395/-

www.assimil.com